

Library of Congress.

Chap. E178
1

Shelf B62

Copyright - No.

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

c 3393.13'

A
GRAMMAR-SCHOOL HISTORY
OF THE
UNITED STATES;
FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA TO THE
PRESENT TIME.

BY
J. S. BLACKBURN,
Principal of "Alexandria High School," Virginia.

AND
W. N. McDONALD, A. M.,
Principal of "Male High School," of Louisville, Kentucky.

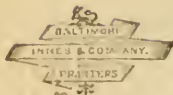


BALTIMORE:
W. J. C. DULANY & CO., 332 W. BALTIMORE STREET.
1871.

271

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1871, by
J. S. BLACKBURN AND W. N. McDONALD,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

E 178
.
B 62



PREFACE.

At the request of many educators who have been using the "New School History of the United States," and who think it desirable that a History suitable for younger pupils should be offered in connection with the above-mentioned History, the authors have prepared the following "Grammar-School History of the United States." This is the *first* and *only one* that has been prepared by Southern writers.

As in their former History, it has been the endeavor of the authors, in the present one, to present to teachers a School History of the United States free from sectional views and partisan statements, and yet giving the history of the Southern Colonies and the Southern States a greater prominence than has been accorded by the authors of Northern Histories. It has been particularly their aim to relieve their section from the false statements and misrepresentations that fill the Northern Histories. They have, however, studiously avoided thrusting into the narrative any personal *opinions*. They have limited themselves to narrating the actual **FACTS** in connection with the history of our country, feeling confident that the mere statement of them will do full justice to the South.

The events of the History have been narrated continuously, rather than in chronological order: deeming this the best plan to secure the attention of the young student.

Frequent MAP-QUESTIONS are given in order to enable the pupil to trace the movements of armies during the wars in which the United States has been engaged.

The REVIEW QUESTIONS appended to each Part will be found exhaustive of the text, and are topical in their character, thus compelling the pupil to recall the leading events of the History and to group them methodically.

At the close of the book will be found the Declaration of Independence; the Constitution of the United States, with questions thereon; a Chronological Record of Events; a Pronouncing Vocabulary; and numerous Tables containing matter of interest in connection with the history of the country.

April 11, 1871.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

	PAGE.
The Indians.....	xi

PART I.

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA TO THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

CHAPTER I.—DISCOVERY AND EARLY COLONIZATION OF AMERICA.

SECTION.

1. Columbus.....	1
2. Discovery of America and Early Explorations.....	4
3. French and Spanish Discoveries.....	7
4. Ferdinand de Soto, and Sir Walter Raleigh.....	10

CHAPTER II.—VIRGINIA.

1. Settlement at Jamestown.....	14
2. History of the Settlement (continued).....	18
3. History of the Settlement (continued).....	21
4. History of the Settlement (continued).....	21
5. History of the Settlement (continued).....	23

CHAPTER III.—NEW ENGLAND.

1. Settlement of the Puritans.....	32
2. Settlement of Rhode Island and other Eastern States.....	35

CHAPTER IV.—MARYLAND AND NEW YORK.

1. Colonization of Maryland.....	38
2. Colonization of New York.....	41
3. Colonization of New York (continued).....	44

CHAPTER V.—PENNSYLVANIA AND DELAWARE..... 46

CHAPTER VI.—THE CAROLINAS AND GEORGIA.

1. Colonization of North Carolina.....	48
2. Colonization of South Carolina.....	51
3. Colonization of Georgia.....	54

CHAPTER VII.—NEW ENGLAND..... 57

CHAPTER VIII.—THE MISSISSIPPI AND OHIO VALLEYS.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----|
| 1. Settlement of Louisiana | 61 |
| 2. The Prelude to the French War..... | 64 |

CHAPTER IX.—THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----|
| 1. Braddock's Campaign..... | 66 |
| 2. Events of 1758 and 1759..... | 69 |
| 3. Indian Wars..... | 72 |

PART II.

FROM THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF
THE UNITED STATES.

CHAPTER I.—CAUSE AND COMMENCEMENT OF THE REVOLUTION.

SECTION.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| 1. Resistance to Taxation..... | 77 |
| 2. First Battles of the War | 80 |

CHAPTER II.—REVOLUTION (CONTINUED).

- | | |
|--|----|
| 1. Invasion of Canada. Evacuation of Boston. Attack on Fort
Moultrie..... | 81 |
| 2. Capture of New York. Battles in New Jersey. Capture of
Philadelphia..... | 88 |

CHAPTER III.—REVOLUTION (CONTINUED).

- | | |
|--|----|
| 1. Burgoyne's Invasion..... | 93 |
| 2. Alliance with France. Battle of Monmouth. Expedition of
Massachusetts..... | 96 |

CHAPTER IV.—REVOLUTION (CONTINUED).

- | | |
|--|-----|
| 1. War in the South. Arnold's Treason..... | 100 |
| 2. Surrender of Cornwallis. Peace declared. Exploits of John Paul
Jones | 106 |
| 3. Convention of 1787. Provisions of the Constitution..... | 111 |

PART III.

FROM THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE UNITED STATES TO THE
GREAT SECTIONAL WAR.

CHAPTER I.—ADMINISTRATIONS OF WASHINGTON, ADAMS, AND JEFFERSON.

SECTION.

- | | |
|--|-----|
| 1789-1809..... | 115 |
| 1. Washington's Administration. Early history of Kentucky and
Tennessee | 115 |
| 2. Administrations of Adams and Jefferson. War with Tripoli..... | 121 |

	PAGE
CHAPTER II.—MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, AND THE WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN.....	123
1. Causes of the war. Campaign of 1812.....	123
2. Campaign of 1813. Harrison's operations.....	126
CHAPTER III.—MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, AND THE WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN CONTINUED.....	120
1. Campaign of 1813 on New York frontier. Cockburn's depredations	120
2. Creek war. Campaign of 1814 on New York frontier. Capture of Washington. Bombardment of Fort Mellenry.....	133
CHAPTER IV.—MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, AND THE WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN CONTINUED.....	138
1. Conduct of New Englanders. Battle of New Orleans.....	138
2. Naval battles of war of 1812. Mississippi.....	140
CHAPTER V.—FROM MONROE TO POLK, 1817-1845.....	144
CHAPTER VI.—ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES K. POLK, AND THE MEXICAN WAR.....	149
1. Taylor's Campaign. Conquest of California	149
2. Scott's Campaign. Treaty of Peace with Mexico.....	154
CHAPTER VII.—ADMINISTRATIONS OF TAYLOR, FILLMORE, PIERCE, AND BUCHANAN.....	158

PART IV.

HISTORY OF THE GREAT SECTIONAL WAR AND THE YEARS
ENSUING.

SECTION.	CHAPTER I.—SECTIONAL WAR.....	164
1. Signs of War. Formation of Confederate States. Fall of Fort Sumter. Secession of Border States.....		164
2. War in Virginia. War in Missouri.....		167
3. Naval Expeditions War in West Virginia War in Kentucky.....		171
4. War in Kentucky. Battle of Shiloh. Fall of New Orleans. Capture of Roanoke Island. Naval battle near Norfolk.....		174
5. McClellan's Campaign against Richmond. Stonewall Jackson's Valley Campaign. Invasion of Maryland.....		177
6. Invasion of Kentucky. Battles of Fredericksburg and Murfreesboro. Emancipation Proclamation.....		181
7. Battle of Chancellorsville. Invasion of Pennsylvania.....		183
8. Fall of Vicksburg and Port Hudson. Cavalry Raids. Siege of Charleston. Battles of Chickamauga and Missionary Ridge. Condition of North and South.....		185

	PAGE
SECTION.	
CHAPTER II.—CAMPAIGNS OF 1864 AND 1865.....	189
1. Banks' Red River Expedition. Grant's advance to Petersburg.....	189
2. Sigel's, and Hunter's advance. Early's Valley campaign. The Alabama sunk	193
3. Capture of Atlanta. Hood's advance to Nashville. Sherman's ad- vance to Raleigh. Capture of Richmond. Surrender at Appo- mattox	196
CHAPTER III.—JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION.....	201
Declaration of Independence.....	206
Constitution of United States.....	210
Chronological Record.....	223
TABLE I. Presidents and Vice-Presidents of the United States.....	235
II. Settlement, admission, population, &c., of the States and Ter- ritories.....	236
III. Showing progress of the United States.....	238
IV. Showing value of Federal and Confederate paper money during the Great Sectional War.....	238
Pronouncing Vocabulary.....	240

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

INTRODUCTION.

AMERICAN ABORIGINES.

1. America, when discovered by the white man, was peopled with a new and strange race. Their origin is unknown. They had no knowledge of the art of writing, and their traditions are vague and contradictory. They were called **INDIANS** because the first discovered land (San Salvador) was thought to be one of the East Indies. It is probable that they came from Asia. The Mexicans lived in cities and had many of the arts of civilized life: but the Indian tribes found in the present limits of the United States were barbarous. Of these only we shall now speak.

INDIAN RACES.

2. The principal stocks were: **I.** The Algonquins; **II.** the Iroquois; **III.** the Appalachians; **IV.** the Cherokees; **V.** the Dacotahs; **VI.** the Chicoras. The Algonquins included those tribes found in the country extending from the Ohio and Mississippi eastward to

1. Why were the aborigines of this country called Indians? Whence did they come? Why do we know nothing of their past? Were the Mexicans barbarous?

2. What are the principal stocks? What country did the Algonquins occupy? What, the Iroquois? What, the Appalachians? What, the Cherokees? The Dacotahs? The Tuscaroras?

the Atlantic, northward beyond the lakes, and southward along the seaboard to Cape Fear river. The Iroquois occupied the western parts of New York and Pennsylvania, and were surrounded by the Algonquins; the Appalachians, the country bounded by the rivers Savannah, Sabine and Ohio; the Cherokees, the rich valleys of the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers; the Dacotahs, the valleys of the Arkansas and Missouri; the Tuscaroras, the Carolinas.

MODE OF LIFE, RELIGION, AND GOVERNMENT.

3. The Indians lived scattered in villages of wigwams. For a subsistence they hunted and fished, sometimes cultivating patches of corn. The squaws did all the work. The business of the men was to hunt and fight. To this end, the education of the youth was directed. They believed in one supreme God; but from fear often worshipped inferior deities. Heaven to them was a happy hunting ground, the home of the brave. At death, a warrior's weapons and most prized goods were buried with him. There was no one in authority except the Chief and Medicine Man. The power of the Chief depended upon his valor and eloquence; that of the Medicine Man upon his skill in juggling and the art of healing.

3. How did the Indians subsist? What was the occupation of the men? Who did all the work? What was the religion of the Indians? Who were the only persons in authority among them?

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

PART I.

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA TO THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

CHAPTER I.

DISCOVERY AND EARLY COLONIZATION OF AMERICA.

SECTION I.

WHO DISCOVERED AMERICA?

1. One may learn from history a great deal about the different races of people, which, from time immemorial, have dwelt in the countries of the eastern hemisphere: but concerning those which have occupied America, history goes no further back than the year 1492. It is true that an Icelandic historian claims for his own countrymen the credit of having discovered and colonized America about 1004; and it is certain that Greenland was settled by this people about this time; but there is no proof that any European ever knew of the existence of America before its discovery by Columbus.

1. What may one learn from history concerning the inhabitants of the Eastern Hemisphere? What concerning those of America? What is claimed by an Icelandic historian? When and by whom was Greenland settled?

EARLY LIFE OF COLUMBUS.

2. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, the discoverer of the New World, was born in Genoa, 1435. He was a studious boy; but his father was too poor to let him devote much time to his books. He nevertheless got a fair knowledge of astronomy, mathematics, and geography. At the age of fourteen he went to sea, and soon became a great traveller. He visited Madeira and the Canaries. He also went to Iceland, and explored the waters just beyond it.

HE CONCEIVES THE IDEA OF A "WESTERN WORLD."

3. The great object of mercantile enterprise at this time was to find a new and near way to India; for this land of luxuries enriched all who shared its commerce. Columbus caught the desire of his age, and bent all the energies of his genius to gratify it. The prevailing notion then was, that India would be most easily reached by going around Africa. Columbus thought that a westward route would be nearer. But who would dare attempt it? He thought there must be land in the western hemisphere; and from what he had noticed in his voyages to points on the western confines of the known world, he was led to think that this land was peopled. After much reflection he resolved to go in search of it. But how could he? Men and money were necessary, and he had neither.

2. When and where was Columbus born? Give an account of his early life. When did he go to sea? What strange countries did he visit?

3. What was the great object of mercantile enterprise at this time? Why? What did Columbus think about the nearest route to India? Did he think there was land in the Western Hemisphere? Why? What did he resolve to do?

HIS EFFORTS TO OBTAIN AID.

4. He first asked aid of his home government in Genoa, and was refused. He next applied to John II. of Portugal, and was again refused. He now sent Bartholomew, his brother, to get assistance from Henry VII. of England. But Bartholomew was captured by pirates. Eight years longer he tried before succeeding. At last, ISABELLA, Queen of Spain, was persuaded by his eloquence to furnish him with three vessels and ninety men: though, to do this, she had to part with some of her jewels. The fleet, consisting of the *Santa Maria*, the *Pinta*, and the *Nina*, was supplied with a year's provisions, and, in addition to the crew, carried about thirty adventurers.

THE VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY.

5. Solemnizing their departure with religious services, Columbus and his companions left Palos, August 3d, 1492. Stopping at the Canaries for nearly three weeks, from that point they sailed westward, leaving the known world behind. Columbus was now nearly sixty years of age. For this moment he had waited long and patiently. His hopes were soon to be realized, or else dashed to earth forever. Confident in his judgment, he did not doubt as to the result. His companions were perhaps not so calm; and, as the land faded from their view, no doubt they watched with trembling hearts the western face of the deep. For

4. To whom did he first apply for aid, and with what success? To whom next? Who finally gave him assistance? With what did she furnish him? To do this, with what did she have to part?

5. When did Columbus leave Palos? Where did he stop? How old was Columbus at this time? Was he confident of success? How long before the sailors threatened to mutiny? How did Columbus quiet them?

two weeks they murmured but little ; but when, at the end of twenty days, no land appeared, they threatened to mutiny if Columbus did not return. Their murmurs continuing to increase, he promised them that, if in three days land was not seen, he would return.

SECTION II.

LAND.

1. On the night of the 11th of October, Columbus saw a light in the distance ; and it was moving. Now hope filled every breast. At three o'clock a gun from the *Pinta*, followed by a shout of joy, announced the discovery of land. As day broke, they saw before them a beautiful green island. Red men, naked and beardless, with long black hair, stood along the shore, and, with awe-struck faces, gazed at the new-comers. The ships they took for large sea-birds ; while they regarded the Spaniards as visitors from the skies. On the morning of the 12th of October, Columbus, richly attired and with sword in hand, was the first to go ashore. As soon as he reached the beach, he knelt and kissed it, returning thanks to God. His men, closely following, rendered him homage as viceroy, and implored his pardon for the trouble they had caused him. This first-discovered land was one of the Bahama Islands, and was called by Columbus ST. SALVADOR.

1. When was land first seen ? Under what circumstances ? What was the appearance of the natives found there ? How did they regard the new-comers ? What land was it ? What did Columbus call it ?

OTHER DISCOVERIES.

2. From this point, sailing southward, he discovered the islands of CUBA and HAYTI. These were supposed to be a part of the East Indies, and hence were afterwards called the WEST INDIES. On the 1st of January, 1493, having left thirty-five of his men as a colony at Hayti, Columbus set sail for Spain. On the homeward passage a violent storm threatened to destroy the fleet. Columbus enclosed in a cake of wax a hasty account of his discoveries, and, putting it in a cask, threw it overboard. The vessels weathered the gale and reached Spain in safety. Columbus was gladly received by the king and queen of Spain, and was loaded with honors by them. In the three other voyages made by Columbus to the New World, his attention seems to have been confined to the islands lying between North and South America. Most of these were discovered by him; and, at Hayti, he erected a fort and established a colony. This occurred during his second voyage, made in the latter part of 1493.

PERSECUTION AND DEATH OF COLUMBUS.

3. In 1498, Columbus made his third voyage and discovered the continent at the mouth of the river Orinoco, in South America. From the size of the stream he thought he had touched a continent, and that it was

2. What islands did he next discover? Why are they called the "West Indies"? When did he start on his return? Give an account of the homeward passage. How was he received by the king and queen? To what was his attention particularly directed in his three other voyages? Where and when did he erect a fort and establish a colony?

3. When did Columbus make his third voyage? What did he discover? Why did he think he had found a continent? What troubles now beset him? How was he treated by his friends and enemies? When and where did he die?

Asia. His fourth and last voyage was made in 1502, in company with his brother Bartholomew, and his son Ferdinand, during which he examined the coast of Darien. In the meantime, he had to contend with ill-fortune. His followers, disappointed at not finding in the New World a land of gold, accused him to the home government of gross mismanagement. Many, jealous of his fame, readily listened to these stories. During his absence, envy was busy attacking his character; hence the latter part of his life was rendered miserable by the neglect of his friends and the persecution of his foes. He died at Valladolid, in the seventy-first year of his age. (1506.)

JOHN CABOT AND HIS SON SEBASTIAN.

4. Columbus, as we have seen, did not come in sight of the continent of America until 1498. Fourteen months before this, on the 24th of June, 1497, it was discovered by JOHN CABOT and his son Sebastian, along the coast of Labrador. They were Venitians who had been sent out by Henry VII. of England "to search for countries hitherto unseen by Christian people," and were the first to reach the mainland. This is the discovery that established England's priority of title to North America, and helps to explain how the English language, laws, and customs, now prevail on this continent. Not long after this, Sebastian Cabot embarked in the spring-time with three hundred men, with the intention of exploring the North Seas. He came to a point where, in the month of July, the light of day was

4. When was the continent of America first discovered? By whom? Why is this fact important? Give an account of the voyage of Sebastian Cabot to the North Seas. What did he report on his return? What is the origin of the name "America"?

almost continual. The numerous icebergs made him turn his course southward. Coasting along as far as Albemarle Sound, he took possession in the King's name. On reaching home, he reported that the nations in the north were clad in skins, and understood the use of copper. Two years after the discovery of the continent by John Cabot, it was visited by a Florentine named Amerigo Vespucci, who, upon his return, published a map of the coast. From this the country was called AMERICA.

FRENCH DISCOVERIES.

5. Adventurers from all parts of Europe now flocked to the New World. Their main object was gold. The monarchs of Europe strove who should get the largest part of the territory; so, enterprise in that direction was greatly encouraged. The fisheries of Newfoundland had been a source of wealth to the inhabitants of northwest France for twenty years before the French crown turned its attention to America. In 1524, Verazzini, a Florentine, was employed by Francis I. to make a voyage of discovery to the new regions. He first reached the coast of North Carolina; from there he sailed northward to Nova Scotia, and thence home to France.

SECTION III.

DISCOVERY OF THE ST. LAWRENCE.

1. Jacques Cartier was, however, the mariner whose voyages guided the attention of France to the region

5. With what object did adventurers now flock to the New World? Why was enterprise in that direction encouraged by the European monarchs? Whom did Francis I. send out to the new country? When and with what purpose? Give an account of his voyage.

1. What mariner directed the attention of France to the region of the St. Lawrence? Give an account of his second voyage. What induced others to attempt a settlement on the St. Lawrence? With what success? When and by whom was the first permanent settlement made in America by the French?

of the St. Lawrence. In his second voyage, he reached New Foundland, May, 1534. On St. Lawrence day he discovered the gulf of that name, and the same name has gradually extended to the river. He explored the latter as far as the island of Hochelaya. Upon this, at the foot of a mountain, was an Indian village. To the mountain he gave the name of MONT-REAL, and this name has since been transferred to the island. Here he spent a severe winter. At the approach of spring he solemnly erected a cross, and left suspended upon it a shield with an inscription declaring the country to belong to the crown of France. He then returned home without having made any settlement. His account of the size and magnificence of the river induced others, from hopes of gain and conquest, to attempt a settlement. But it was not until the year 1605 that the first permanent settlement was made by the French in America. This was effected by De Montz, a Huguenot, at Port Royal, Nova Scotia, two years before James River was discovered.

SPANISH ENTERPRISE.

2. As Spain had been the first to listen to Columbus, so she kept the lead in making discoveries in the New World. The SPANIARDS, daring and avaricious, hastened to the conquest of a country which their heated imaginations pictured full of untold treasures. Mines of gold, valleys of diamonds, rivers with banks of rubies, and springs whose waters contained the elixir of life, were in this enchanted land to be the prizes of the

2. What country of Europe took the lead in exploring the New World? Why did the Spaniards make haste to conquer it?

brave. Hence, at first, there was a continuous stream of adventurers from Spain to the New World.

PONCE DE LEON.

3. Florida was discovered in 1512 by PONCE DE LEON. He was an aged and rich Spaniard; and, believing a tale of a fairy region where was a fountain of youth-giving waters, he went in search of it. He visited the Bahamas and other places with this object. On Easter Sunday, which the Spaniards call Pascua Florida, March 23d, he discovered an unknown land. From the name of the day and the flowery prospect, they called it FLORIDA. Going ashore, he searched in vain for the mystic fountain, and finally abandoned the attempt, an older and not a younger man. Nine years afterward he returned and was mortally wounded by the Indians.

DISCOVERY OF THE PACIFIC OCEAN.

4. The first permanent settlement on the American continent was made on the Isthmus of Darien. In 1513, BALBOA, the governor of this, discovered from a neighboring mountain the PACIFIC OCEAN. Descending to the seashore, he took possession of the country in the name of the king of Spain. This was the first proof of America being a continent distinct from Asia.

CORTEZ AND CABEZA DE VACA.

5. The reports of the great wealth of the people living in MEXICO induced Velasquez, Governor of Cuba,

3. When was Florida discovered? By whom? Under what circumstances? What is the origin of its name? What became of De Leon?

4. When and by whom was the Pacific Ocean discovered? Of what was this the first proof?

to send FERNANDO CORTEZ with six hundred men to conquer the country. In 1519, the expedition landed, and, before the lapse of two years, Cortez, by means of valor and cunning, had completed the conquest. The treasure obtained by the conquerors was immense, and accounts of it inflamed the ambition and avarice of others. In the regions north of the Gulf of Mexico, then called by the Spaniards Florida, it was thought there were cities as full of gold as those of Mexico. Accordingly an attempt was made by Narvaez in 1528 to find them. He was lost, and of his three hundred followers but four returned. These four, of whom Cabeza de Vaca was chief, wandered through Alabama and Tennessee, crossed the Mississippi, traced the course of the Arkansas, and continued westward until the Pacific Ocean was reached in May, 1539. From this point they joined the Spaniards in Mexico, and gave a glowing account of the countries they had seen.

SECTION IV.

FERDINAND DE SOTO.

1. No one was more willing to believe in the riches of Florida than FERDINAND DE SOTO. He had won wealth and fame in the conquest of Peru, and hoped by conquering this new land to outshine even Cortez. In 1539, he landed on the coast with six hundred men.

5 Who conquered Mexico? How long did it take him? What did he find there? What did the Spaniards call the country north of Mexico? Who went there in 1528? With what design? What was accomplished? What countries were explored by Cabeza de Vaca?

1. Who was Ferdinand de Soto? What did he attempt? What did he do? What became of him? What became of his followers?

He was prepared for a long march, having brought with him a forge, a drove of hogs, chains for captives, bloodhounds, and packs of cards. With these he entered the wilderness and wandered for more than a year through Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, looking for the land of gold. In 1541, he crossed the Mississippi, and explored portions of Arkansas and Missouri. At last, worn out by fatigue and disappointment, De Soto fell sick and died (1542). His body was wrapped in a mantle, and sunk at midnight in the middle of the Mississippi. His followers, after vainly attempting to go by land to Mexico, returned to the Mississippi. Here, building some frail boats, they descended the river, and finally reached Mexico.

MASSACRE OF FRENCH COLONISTS IN FLORIDA.

2. Florida, which in Spanish geography embraced the United States and Canada, was for a time abandoned by the Spaniards. In 1564, a settlement was made on St. John's river by some French Protestants who had fled thither from persecution at home. They called their fort *Carolina*, in honor of Charles IX., King of France, and thus gave a name to that region a century before it was colonized by the English. Philip II., king of Spain, determined to break up this settlement. For this purpose he sent (1565) Melandez, a bloodthirsty fanatic, with a large force against it. The latter reached the coast on St. Augustine's day, and gave the name of that saint to the river up which

2. What settlement was made in Florida by the French, and when? Whence came the name of *Carolina*? Who determined to break up this French settlement? Who was sent to do this? Give an account of the expedition of Melandez. How did he treat his captives? How was this atrocity avenged, and when?

he sailed, and to the town which he founded upon its banks. In a short time Melandez approached the French fort. John Ribault, its commander, went out with most of his men in ships to fight him at sea. A storm arose, wrecking the French fleet and driving the Spaniards ashore. Melandez now assailed the fort by land and easily took it, cruelly butchering all of the garrison and most of the women and children. The French also who had survived the wreck of their ships were induced to surrender, and were then slain. To avenge this atrocity, Chevalier Gourgues, in 1567, with one hundred and fifty men, attacked the Spaniards in Florida. After taking two forts and hanging the garrisons, he returned to France. The Spanish colonies, thus originating in jealous bigotry, were the first permanently established in the United States.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

3. While Spain was thus conquering and colonizing in the New World, England had not yet gained a foothold there. Many attempts were made by Englishmen in the 16th century to establish colonies in America, but without success. From the time of Elizabeth, liberal patents were granted to the enterprising; many lives and much treasure were expended; but it was not till 1607 that a permanent English settlement was made in America. Foremost among those who directed the attention of the English to America was SIR WALTER RALEIGH. He was a poet, statesman and soldier, and

3. Were any attempts made by the English to establish colonies in America in the 16th century? With what success? From whose time were liberal patents granted? Who was Sir Walter Raleigh? What expedition did he send out in 1584? What was done by it? What is the origin of the name *Virginia*?

clearly discerned the importance of England's gaining possessions in the New World. In 1584, he sent out Amidas and Barlow in two vessels, instructing them to incline towards the south. Reaching Carolina the same year, in midsummer, they were so carried away with the beauty of the country that they came home loud in their praise of the new land. Elizabeth was so highly pleased with the account of what seemed enchanted regions that she named them VIRGINIA, as a memorial of her virgin state.

SIR RICHARD GREENVILLE AND CAPTAIN WHITE.

4. Raleigh fitted out two more expeditions, but neither succeeded in making a permanent settlement. Sir Richard Greenville, who conducted the first, landed, in 1585, on the Carolina coast, and attempted to establish a colony. The men he left there became discontented and returned to England. Another party of fifteen colonists left by him in the following year were never heard of afterwards. The second was conducted by Captain White. In 1587, he reached Carolina, and established a colony on Roanoke Island. He had brought with him his family, and, soon after landing, his daughter, the wife of one of the assistants, gave birth to a female child. The infant, the first offspring of English parents on American soil, was called Virginia Dare. In a short time, Captain White returned to England for reinforcements and supplies, leaving one hundred and eight souls on the island. He was gone

4. Give an account of the expedition under Sir Richard Greenville. Give an account of the one under Captain White. What was the name of the first English child born in America? Were White's colonists ever heard of after his departure?

three years, and when he came back, not a trace could be found of the colonists. Five several times afterwards did Raleigh send, at his own expense, to search for the lost colonists. Nothing was ever heard of them afterwards.

CHAPTER II.

VIRGINIA.

SECTION I.

THE FOUNDING OF JAMESTOWN (17TH MAY, 1607).

1. The importance of colonizing America becoming every day more and more apparent, King James encouraged the organization of companies for this purpose. In 1606, he granted to the "London Company" the exclusive right to plant colonies on the American coast between the 38th and 34th degrees of north latitude. Acting under this charter, the "London Company" sent out a colony of one hundred and five persons under the leadership of Captain Newport. The fleet of three vessels was driven by a storm past Roanoke Island into Chesapeake Bay. To the headlands of this Bay they gave in passing the names they now bear, Cape Henry and Cape Charles, after the sons of the King; and the northern point within, where they anchored in "good comfort," they named Point Comfort. They soon entered a noble river, which they called *James*, after the King; and about fifty miles from the mouth they landed, and founded the city of JAMESTOWN.

1. What did King James grant to the London Company in 1606? Who conducted the first colony? Give an account of the voyage and the points named by the colonists. What is the origin of the name Point Comfort? How far from the mouth of the river did they land?

CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH ASSUMES THE LEADERSHIP.

2. At this juncture Wingfield was deposed, and Ratcliffe elected president. He was lazy and wanting in judgment, and there was soon much disorder. The control of affairs now fell into the hands of CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH, who, on a charge of sedition, had, for a while, been denied his place in the Council. He was, however, restored without a trial, and now, by his address and energy, saved the infant colony.

HIS LIFE AND ADVENTURES.

3. This remarkable man, though not yet thirty years of age, was already famous for his wonderful adventures. He was born in Lincolnshire, England, in 1579. At the age of fifteen he ran away from a merchant to whom he had been apprenticed, and went to Holland. Here he enlisted as a soldier, and fought for the independence of the Batavian Republic. Thence he travelled over most of Europe. Finding his way to Austria, he enlisted as a soldier in the war against the Turks. In this war he distinguished himself by glorious feats of arms, fighting three single combats with Turkish champions, and, in each, cutting off the head of his antagonist. He was finally wounded and captured, and sold as a slave. After suffering much and doing many wonderful things, he found his way back to England, and was chosen one of the Virginia Council.

2. At first, who was elected president? Into whose hands did the control of affairs soon fall? How had Captain Smith at first been treated?

3. When and where was Smith born? Give an account of his life before reaching America.

SMITH RESTORES ORDER.

4. Smith, driven as it were by the necessities of the colony to assume command, soon succeeded in restoring order. His firmness intimidated the evil-disposed and encouraged the faint-hearted. He inspired the Indians with respect and confidence, and not only gained their good will, but obtained from them large supplies of provisions.

A VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY CONTEMPLATED.

5. As soon as peace and plenty reigned, Smith determined to go on a voyage of discovery up the *James* and its tributaries. The company had expressly instructed the Council to seek a communication with the South Sea by ascending some stream which flowed from the northwest. This arose from an idea that the rivers flowing into the Chesapeake Bay connected with, or nearly approached the South Sea.

SMITH IS CAPTURED BY THE INDIANS.

6. For the purpose of obeying the instructions of his employees, Smith determined to explore the Chickahominy, which is a branch of the James flowing from the northwest. Ascending this river for a considerable distance in a barge, he took four men with him, leaving the others in the boat, with instructions not to land in his absence. Proceeding with these four men in canoes, he, after a while, became separated from them in his

4. How did Smith restore order? What did he obtain from the Indians?

5. Why did he determine to go on a voyage of discovery? Where was the South Sea then supposed to be?

6. What river did Smith attempt to explore? Give an account of his capture. How was he treated by the Indians? What use did he make of his pocket-compass?

eager search for game. The Indians, who were watching him all the time, having first slain his men, who had landed contrary to his orders, now attacked him. Captain Smith killed three, and would probably have escaped, if, in his retreat, he had not become entangled in a marsh, where, unable to resist any longer, he surrendered. They carried him before their chief, Opechancanough, the brother of Powhatan. Death seemed certain, but Smith did not despair. He presented the chief with his pocket-compass, and, through an Indian interpreter, explained to him that the world was round, and how that little instrument enabled a man to travel all over it. They believed him, and could not find it in their hearts to kill so wise a man. They took him to Powhatan, and led him around from one tribe to another. The sorcerers were employed for three days in determining whether it would not bring down vengeance on their heads to kill such a superior being. At last, the decision of his fate was referred to Powhatan.

IS CONDEMNED TO DEATH, BUT SAVED BY POCAHONTAS.

7. That venerable king of savages granted him all the honor of a formal trial, and condemned him to be beaten to death with war-clubs. The captive was bound, and placed with his head upon two stones. The executioners were ready with their clubs. POCAHONTAS, the beautiful daughter of the king, entreated her father to spare the prisoner. Afraid of his people, he dared not consent. Her tears and prayers were of no avail; and it was not until, kneeling beside the victim, she laid her head upon his and clung to his

7. What was the sentence of his judges? How was he saved? Who was Pocahontas? What use did Smith make of his time while a captive?

neck, that her father relented. Smith remained with the Indians some time, and made such good use of his leisure while a prisoner, studying their modes of warfare, habits, and language, that his captivity proved the means of afterwards saving the colony.

SECTION II.

SMITH'S RETURN.

1. Smith stayed with the Indians about seven weeks. He was then allowed to go to Jamestown, upon his promising to send back by his guards two cannon, and a grindstone. These, upon reaching home, he offered to his guards, but they thought them too heavy and were glad enough to take instead some toys and trinkets. Upon his return, Smith found the colony greatly reduced by sickness, and the strongest of them about to escape in the pinnace. This attempt at desertion he put down, though at the risk of his life. Shortly afterward Newport arrived from England with supplies and a reinforcement of one hundred and twenty persons, and the spirits of the colonists once more revived.

THE GOLD MANIA.

2. Many of the new emigrants were vagabond gentlemen and goldsmiths, who had come to look for gold. Not long after their arrival glittering earth was found on the river-side, which was thought to contain the precious metal. "There was now no talk, no hope, no

1. Upon what conditions was Smith allowed to return to Jamestown? Did he fulfill them? In what condition did he find the colony? How did he put down the attempt at desertion? What did Newport bring?

2. What was the gold mania? What put an end to it?

work, but dig gold, wash gold, refine gold, load gold." Most of the colonists quitted work, and went to digging the new found treasure. Newport loaded his ships with it and embarked for England. In a short time he returned and brought the news that the precious earth was worthless, and then the gold mania died out.

SMITH'S VOYAGES OF DISCOVERY.

3. In the meantime Smith, disgusted with the follies of the colonists, undertook to explore the Chesapeake and its tributaries. To do this, he made two voyages in an open boat with a few companions. He was gone about three months, and during that time travelled nearly three thousand miles. He went up the Chesapeake to the mouth of the Susquehanna. He discovered and explored the Patapsco, and probably entered the harbor of Baltimore. He ascended the Potomac to the falls above Georgetown, and wherever he went, established, friendly relations with the native tribes. Of the countries explored he prepared a map. It is still extant, and far more correct than those made by other explorers for seventy-five years afterwards.

NEWPORT'S SECOND SUPPLY.

4. Being chosen president of the council shortly after his return to Jamestown, Smith strained every nerve to revive order and industry in the colony. About this time (1608), Newport arrived, bringing more settlers.

3. What did Smith determine to explore? How long was he absent, and how far did he travel up the Chesapeake and Potomac? What sort of relations did he establish with the natives wherever he went?

4. When was Smith chosen president? When did Newport arrive with his second supply? What was the character of the emigrants he brought with him?

Of these, two were females, the first who had yet come. Most of the others were men unaccustomed to toil. Smith wrote to the Company to send no more such, asking for thirty mechanics rather than a thousand idlers.

THE NEW CHARTER.

5. The company, having thus far failed to reap any gains from their outlay in Virginia, asked the king for a new and more liberal charter. This was granted (1609). Under it, the Council in England was to be independent of the monarch, while the Governor of the colony was clothed with almost absolute powers. Lord de La Ware was chosen Governor, and three Commissioners, Newport, Gates, and Somers, were authorized to administer affairs until his arrival. The Commissioners set out with nine vessels and five hundred men. In a storm, near the Bermudas, the vessel containing the Commissioners was stranded, another perished, and only seven ships reached Virginia.

MORE DISTRESS.

6. The arrival of the new-comers increased the troubles of the colony. There was now a new charter, and the officers appointed under it were supposed to be lost. There was no lawful authority, and many felt at liberty to do as they pleased. Provisions became scarce, and the Indians, exasperated by the conduct of some of the whites, threatened a war of extermination.

5. Why was a new charter asked for? How did it differ from the old one? Who was appointed Governor under it? Who were the Commissioners? Give an account of their voyage across the Atlantic.

6. How did the arrival of the newcomers make more trouble? Who came to the rescue? How did he restore order?

The genius of Smith once more rescued the colony from ruin. Assuming his old authority, he forced the idle and turbulent to behave. Some he imprisoned, others he sent off to plant new colonies in Virginia.

SECTION III.

SMITH'S DEPARTURE.

1. Order was with difficulty thus preserved, when an accidental explosion of gunpowder so injured Smith that he was obliged to go to England. Subsequently he came back to America, but never revisited Jamestown. For what he had done he received nothing, not even the house he himself had built. He was the leader of the English race in America and the founder of Virginia. He died in 1631, and was buried in Shrewsbury Church, London. Not many years ago the floor of the church was covered with a fresh cement, and the slab which marks the spot of his grave was thus hidden from view.

THE BRINK OF RUIN REACHED.

2. After Smith's departure the colony soon went to ruin. There was no work, no care, and no order. Quarrels with the Indians were frequent, and the foraging parties of whites were cut off. Soon the supply of provisions was exhausted, and famine was followed by violence and disease. A band of thirty seized a ship

1. What compelled Smith to go to England? Did he ever return to Jamestown? How was he rewarded for his works? When did he die, and where is he buried?

2. What followed the departure of Smith? In six months what took place? What would have taken place had relief been delayed?

and turned pirates. In six months the number was reduced from four hundred and ninety to sixty, and these would have perished if relief had been delayed ten days longer.

JAMESTOWN ABANDONED.

3. Just at this time, Gates arrived. As we have seen, his ship had been wrecked on the rocks of the Bermudas. He and his companions having built two new vessels from the cedars which they felled and from the wrecks of the old one, had come in them to join the colonists. All now embarked with Gates, resolved to abandon forever the place of their suffering. Some, out of spite, wanted to burn the town, but Gates, who was the last to embark, would not permit it. With the tide they dropped down the stream. The next morning, just as they neared the mouth of the river, they met Lord Delaware with ships, men, and supplies. Hope revived, and turning back, they reached Jamestown that night (8th June, 1610).

THE COLONY RESTORED.

4. On the 10th of June, 1610, with religious exercises, the foundation of Virginia was relaid. The colonists, many of whom had been snatched from the jaws of famine and shipwreck, showed a deep sense of the power and mercy of God. Said they, "God will raise our State and build his Church in this excel

3. Who arrived at this time, and where did he come from? What did the colonists all resolve to do? Whom did they meet on their way? What did they do then?

4. Under what circumstances was the colony re-established? Why were the colonists impressed with the mercy of God? After this, how often did they meet in their little church? How many hours a day did they work? What became of their Governor? What did Gates bring with him? About this time, what change took place which proved beneficial to the colony?

lent clime." Daily they met in the little rugged church, "which was kept neatly trimmed with wild flowers," and invoked the blessing of the Most High. Six hours a day they worked in common. Thus, industrious and devout, under the mild yet firm sway of Lord Delaware, peace and plenty returned. Their Governor, however, soon lost his health and went back to England. He was succeeded by Sir Thomas Dale, who brought with him liberal supplies for the colony. Still the colony was small and weak. In August, 1611, Gates, the ever sure friend in need, arrived with six ships and three hundred emigrants. He brought with him also cows, hogs, and goats. More arrivals followed, and the population soon reached seven hundred. About this time the colonists ceased to work in common, and to every man was allotted a certain amount of land for his own use. This was a wise measure. There was now order, abundance, and peace.

MARRIAGE AND DEATH OF POCAHONTAS.

5. In 1613, Capt. Argall stole Pocahontas, and refused to give her up without a ransom. Powhatan, her father, was preparing to come and take her. A bloody Indian war seemed about to occur, and was only prevented by John Rolfe, "an honest and discreet young Englishman." Falling in love with the lovely Indian captive, he persuaded her to become first a Christian, and then his wife. The old chief, her father, consented, and the marriage was celebrated with much pomp. It was followed by a confirmed peace with the Indians; and thus Pocahontas, who had more than

5. Give an account of the marriage of Pocahontas. What good result did it produce? How was Pocahontas received in England? Has she any descendants in Virginia?

once been the means of saving the colony, became now the link of friendship between the white and red men. She has descendants now living in Virginia.

SECTION IV.

FIRST HOUSE OF BURGESSES.

1. In July, 1619, there met at Jamestown the first popular Assembly of the Western hemisphere. It was composed of representatives from the eleven boroughs, and hence was called the HOUSE OF BURGESSES. "This was the happy dawn of legislative liberty in America," and the colonists, proud of their freedom, went to work with renewed energy, "felling timber and building houses." Few women had as yet dared to cross the ocean. Now that the colonists were prosperous and greatly in need of wives, ninety women were persuaded by the company to emigrate. They were soon married, and their husbands willingly paid the cost of their passage. This, at first, was one hundred pounds of tobacco, but the demand increasing, one hundred and fifty pounds was the price asked. In a short time, sixty more "maidens of a virtuous education" arrived, whose expenses were defrayed by their new-found husbands.

NEGRO SLAVERY.

2. "Slavery and the slave trade are older than the records of human society; and with the exception of

1. When did the first House of Burgesses meet? Of what did it consist? How were wives obtained for the colonists? What did they cost?

2. How old is slavery? To what portions of the globe has it extended? What is said of its existence among the Greeks? The Romans? The Saxons, Germans, &c.? Till what time were slaves exported from England? When did the negro slave trade commence in Europe? Upon the discovery of America what was done with the captured Indians? Who was Sir John Hawkins? When and whence did the first American slave-ship sail from America? Where and when were the first negro slaves sold in the colonies?

Australasia, have extended to every portion of the globe." The Hebrews carried it with them into the Land of Canaan from Egypt. The Greeks made slaves of their captives in war; and among the Romans, the wife and children were the slaves of the head of the household. The Saxons, Germans, Spaniards, Venetians, bought and sold slaves. Till 1102, slaves were exported from England to Ireland. The name *slave* comes from the word *Slavonic*, because so many of that race were sold by the Germans into slavery. The *negro slave trade* in Europe commenced about 1415. When America was first colonized by the Spaniards, the natives were enslaved, and many were carried away and sold. In Virginia, the Indians were kidnapped, and in New England the captives were frequently sold into slavery. It was found, however, that the Indian made a poor laborer, and the negro was brought over to take his place. Sir John Hawkins, the first Englishman who engaged in the slave trade, was a man of distinction, and Queen Elizabeth shared the traffic with him. The first American slave-ship sailed from Boston (1645), and a half owner of it was James Smith, a member of the Church of Boston. In August, 1620, "a Dutch man-of-war entered the James River, and landed twenty negroes for sale." This was the beginning of negro slavery in America. Afterwards, it existed in all the colonies.

THE CULTIVATION OF TOBACCO.

2. Tobacco was the currency of the colony. It was first found among the Indians, who, however, only

2. What was the currency in the colony? Did the English learn from the Indians to use it? Why was it so extensively cultivated now?

smoked it. The Europeans were the first to chew and snuff it. The cultivation of tobacco was soon found to be profitable in Virginia, and, in a short time, the fields, the gardens, the public squares, and even the streets of Jamestown were planted with tobacco.

CHARLES I., KING OF ENGLAND.

3. In 1625, Charles I. became King of England. At first he favored the colony, and it grew rapidly. Intent only on getting more revenue, he did not meddle with the rights of the colonists. He proposed to sell for them all their tobacco. To this they assented through their Assembly. In 1629, John Harvey was appointed Governor. He did not make a popular officer. During his rule large portions of the colonial territory were granted by the king to his favorites. One of these was the grant of Maryland to Lord Baltimore. The Virginians complained bitterly of this, and the attempt of a few to resist Baltimore's occupation of the territory had their sympathy. Harvey sided with Baltimore, and thus became so odious to the people that the Assembly suspended him from office. He went to England, and, facing his accusers before the King, was restored in triumph. For two years longer he governed, when he was succeeded by Sir Francis Wyatt.

SIR WILLIAM BERKELEY.

4. In 1642, Sir William Berkeley was appointed Governor. He confirmed the former privileges of the

3. What did King Charles propose to the Virginians? When was Harvey made Governor? Why was he unpopular?

4. What did Berkeley do soon after his appointment? What abuses were now reformed? What was attempted by the Indians? With what success? What chief was taken and slain?

Virginians and received the cordial support of all. Many abuses were now reformed. Religion was provided for; the law about land titles adjusted; taxes more justly assessed, and industry encouraged. The great prosperity of the colony excited the jealousy of the Indians. In 1644, its total destruction was again attempted. The onset was begun upon the frontier settlements, and three hundred persons were killed before the savages were driven back into the wilderness. A fierce war raged, and the Indians were terribly punished. Opechancanough, the old enemy of the whites, was taken, and peace was again established.

THE LOYALTY OF VIRGINIA.

5. About this time, a civil war broke out in England between the King and his Parliament. The Virginians throughout the struggle adhered to their monarch, and after he had been taken and executed on the scaffold, they espoused the cause of his exiled son (1649). Charles II., a fugitive from England, reigned in Virginia, and there his royal banner still proudly waved. The exiled Cavaliers, the friends of the royal cause, found a warm welcome in the houses of the Virginians. "Men of consideration among the nobility, gentry, and clergy," sought refuge along the shores of the Chesapeake, "where every house was for them a hostelry and every planter a friend."

5. In the English civil war, to what side did Virginia adhere? Who found a warm welcome in Virginia?

LOYALTY'S REWARD.

6. In 1650, Parliament, incensed at the open defiance of Virginia, forbade all persons to trade with her, and despatched an armed force to reduce her to obedience. The commissioners with the army were instructed if pardon was refused by the Virginians, to resort to every mode of warfare, and even to arm the slaves against their masters. Massachusetts, instead of sympathizing with her sister colony in distress, passed a law prohibiting all intercourse with her. In 1651, the hostile fleet entered the Chesapeake. Berkeley made ready to oppose it. The odds were much against him, but his gallant display secured him favorable terms of surrender. It was stipulated that "the Virginians should have all the rights of free-born Englishmen, and that they should not be taxed without the consent of their own Assembly."

SECTION V.

THE REVOLT OF VIRGINIA.

1. During the rule of Cromwell in England, Cavaliers, flying from persecution, continued to seek refuge in Virginia. They brought with them a hatred of the Protector and an undying love for their exiled king. Hence the feeling of loyalty grew daily stronger. In

6. What did Parliament do in 1650? What were the instructions of the Commissioners? Did Berkeley resist? What good did his gallant display do?

1. What made the feeling of loyalty increase in Virginia? When did that colony revolt against the authority of Parliament? What prevented the home government from punishing her?

1658, Matthews, the Governor, died; the people rose and boldly erected the royal standard: About this time Cromwell died, and, happily for the colonists, the distractions that ensued in England prevented her rulers from punishing Virginia. Not long afterwards Charles was restored, and the Virginians could truly say that "they were the last to renounce and the first to resume their allegiance to the crown." In honor of his loyal Virginians, Charles wore at his coronation a robe of Virginia silk, and since that time Virginia has been often called "THE OLD DOMINION."

NATHANIEL BACON.

2. Upon the restoration of monarchy, oppressive laws were passed by the home government. The King granted away large portions of the colonial territory. The Northern Neck was granted to Culpepper (1669). In 1673, the whole of Virginia was granted to Culpepper and Arlington. The pressure of these grievances soon began to excite open discontent. Even Berkeley became unpopular. The dissatisfaction was artfully promoted by Nathaniel Bacon, an ambitious and designing young demagogue. A native of England, he had come to the colony three years before. He was implicated in a plot of the preceding year, had been imprisoned and pardoned by the Governor. He was bold, handsome, eloquent, crafty and unscrupulous. With skill, he fed the spirit of discontent until there only wanted an occasion to start an open rebellion.

2. What followed the restoration of monarchy? What grants did Charles make? Who was Bacon? What was his previous history and character?

BACON GOES TO JAMESTOWN FOR HIS COMMISSION.

3. This was furnished by the Indian outrages on the border. A war having broken out with the Susquehannahs, they were ravaging the whole frontier from the Potomac to the James. The people rose in arms and chose Bacon as their leader. He assured them that he would redress all their wrongs. He applied to the Governor for a commission, and offered to go at once against the Indians. Berkeley, mistrusting his motives, refused. Thereupon, at the head of five hundred men, Bacon marched to Jamestown. The Governor defied him. The Council then in session, intimidated, commissioned him Captain-General of all the forces of Virginia. The Governor was persuaded to sign it. No sooner, however, had the rebels departed than the commission was annulled. Bacon and his men returned. Berkeley and the Council fled, and civil war commenced (1676).

CIVIL WAR.

4. To legalize his acts, Bacon summoned a convention of the principal planters and secured their support. He now marched against the Indians. After defeating them, he returned to fight the loyalists. Berkeley was not idle. He had grown gray in the service of Virginia, and had many friends. The hostile forces met, and civil war with all its horrors raged. Estates were pillaged, plantations laid waste, and Jamestown was

3. What furnished a pretext for rebellion? Why did the Governor refuse to grant a commission to Bacon? How did he finally get it? When did civil war commence?

4. Why did Bacon summon a convention? Against whom did he then march? With what success? What character did the civil war now assume? What part did the King take? How did the war end?

reduced to ashes. Charles proclaimed Bacon a traitor, and sent over troops to help Berkeley. Before their arrival, Bacon suddenly sickened and died (1677). His followers soon afterwards surrendered. His death was a fatal blow to his party, and the rapidity with which it then fell to pieces shows how much he was its soul. Thus ended a contest which seemed, at one time, about to ruin the colony.

CULPEPPER AND EFFINGHAM.

5. Culpepper, as Governor (1680-1684), oppressed and robbed the people. So did Effingham, his successor. His extortions at last excited so much ill-feeling that he was obliged to go to England to face his accusers. Before their arrival, James was removed (1688) from the throne, and William of Orange seated upon it. Effingham was not dismissed until 1692, though he never afterwards returned to Virginia.

INFLUENCE OF REVOLUTION OF 1688.

6. The revolution which placed William III. upon the throne of Great Britain was the source of much good to Virginia. The college of William and Mary was now established. The King still continued to appoint the Governors, but their powers were defined, and the authority of the Colonial Assemblies was able to restrain them from making any inroads upon the Constitution. Spotswood, one of the colonial Governors

5. What was the character of the administration of Culpepper? Of Effingham? Why was Effingham obliged to go to England? What occurred before he got there?

6. Of what good was the revolution in England productive for the colony? Who explored the valley beyond the Blue Ridge? What did he give to each of his companions?

(1710-1722), was the first to explore the beautiful valleys beyond the Blue Ridge, and, on returning, gave each of his companions a golden horse-shoe. The first iron furnace in North America was established by him.

THE CHURCH ESTABLISHMENT.

7. In 1688, Virginia contained a population of 60,000. Now that there was perfect security, her numbers steadily increased. Until 1776, the Episcopal was the established Church, and every one was taxed to support it. There were forty-eight parishes. In each parish was a church, with a parsonage-house and glebe attached. In 1688, the majority of the people belonged to the Established Church. Soon afterwards a change took place, and, at the beginning of the American Revolution, two-thirds of the people were dissenters from the Episcopal Church.

CHAPTER III.

NEW ENGLAND.

SECTION I.

ATTEMPTS AT COLONIZATION.

1. The Plymouth Company, in whose grant of land between 41° and 45° north latitude New England was included, failed to make any permanent settlements in that region. In 1614, Captain John Smith explored

7. What was the population of Virginia in 1688? What Church were all taxed to support? How many parishes were there? What proportion of the people were dissenters?

1. When and by whom did New England receive its name? Who first settled it? In whose grant was the country included?

the coast of New England and gave it that name. In 1620, James I. granted to a company of forty persons all the land between 40° and 48°. Before anything was done by these, the first permanent settlement was made by a body of PURITANS without charter or authority.

THE FIRST SETTLEMENT.

2. The Puritans were a religious sect in England, and were so called from their affected purity of manners. They objected to all forms and refused to commune with every church unlike their own. Laws were passed requiring them to attend public worship in the parochial churches or to leave the country. Preferring exile, many emigrated to Holland. In 1620, a portion of these returned to Southampton, where they took ship for America. After a rough passage, they reached the coast (9th Nov., 1620). John Carver was elected Governor. After exploring the coast, it was determined to settle at PLYMOUTH ROCK. On the twenty-first of December they landed, and the next day commenced building houses. The colony at first numbered one hundred and two persons. Before spring, more than one-half of these, including the Governor, perished from hunger and disease. Indeed, for years there was much suffering. In 1623, it is said they had but a pint of corn to divide. This was because, like the Jamestown colonists, they worked in common. The following year, every man had his own farm. After that, corn was abundant.

2. Who were the Puritans? Why did they leave England? Where did they first sail from for America? Where, after examining the coast, did they determine to settle? What was the number of the first colonists? Did they have to suffer much? Why? What change brought abundance? When was a representative system of government adopted?

In 1624, more emigrants arrived, bringing cattle, hogs, and poultry, and the colony now contained one hundred and eighty inhabitants. In 1627, their lands were purchased by the colonists of the Plymouth Company for eighteen hundred pounds, and a patent was obtained. In 1639, they adopted a representative system of government.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY COLONY.

3. In 1622, a settlement was made at Weymouth, Mass. In 1628, John Endicott, with one hundred emigrants, settled at Salem. Others followed, and Charlestown, Roxbury, and Boston were founded. These settlements were incorporated, in 1629, under the name of "The Colony of Massachusetts Bay." At first, the government of the colony was conducted in London, but in 1629, it was transferred to Massachusetts. John Winthrop was chosen Governor, and brought over with him, in 1630, eleven ships with eight hundred emigrants. He also brought with him a charter, which was kept till the union of the colonies, Plymouth and Massachusetts, in 1691. Under this charter, the colony was to be governed by the Governor and his assistants, and all the freemen. In 1631, a law was passed allowing none but members of the Church to vote. As this disfranchised three-fourths of the people, there was much complaint. The government was now thrown into the hands of comparatively a few persons, and they were controlled by the clergy. The presence of every man at public worship was now required by law.

3. What settlements did the colony of Massachusetts Bay include? When was the first founded? When did Winthrop arrive? What did he bring with him? What law was passed in 1631? What was the effect of this law?

SECTION III.

SETTLEMENT OF RHODE ISLAND.

1. ROGER WILLIAMS, a bold young preacher, dared to teach that every man had the right to worship God according to the dictates of his own conscience. This was resented by the Boston authorities, and the young zealot continuing intractable, he was ordered to be sent back to England. He fled for safety to the Indians, and for a long time wandered "not knowing what bread or bed did mean." At last, (1636), he, with five companions, selected a spot for their new home, and called it Providence. "I desired," said he, "it might be for a shelter for persons distressed for conscience." In the course of two years he was joined by others fleeing like him from persecution, and, in 1638, he obtained an Indian deed from the chief of the Narragansetts for an extensive domain. Among those who joined him was Mrs. Ann Hutchinson. She had been denounced in Boston for being "like Roger Williams or worse," and on this account had been exiled from the territory of Massachusetts as "unfit for the society of its citizens." She, with some of her friends, settled on the island of Rhodes, in Narragansett Bay. From these two settlements sprang the State of Rhode Island.

COLONIZATION OF MAINE AND NEW HAMPSHIRE.

2. Sir Ferdinand Gorges and John Mason, in 1622, obtained a grant of the territory between the Kennebec

1. Who was Roger Williams? Why did he fly from Boston? When? Where did he found a colony? What did he obtain from the chief of the Narragansetts? Who was Mrs. Ann Hutchinson? Why was Mrs. Hutchinson driven from Massachusetts? From what two settlements sprang the State of Rhode Island?

2. Under what grant were Maine and New Hampshire colonized? When was New Hampshire annexed to Massachusetts? How long did the union last? What is said of Maine?

and Merrimac rivers. Under this grant New Hampshire and Maine were colonized. The first settlement in New Hampshire was made in 1623. In 1641, it was annexed to Massachusetts. The union continued till 1680. In 1652, Maine was also annexed to Massachusetts, and continued as a part of the same until 1820, when it became a State.

CONNECTICUT.

3. In 1614, the Dutch discovered the CONNECTICUT river, and established a trading post on its banks. For some time they held undisturbed possession of the country. In 1635, a fort was built at the mouth of the river, and named *Saybrook* by the English. In the meantime parties of emigrants from the Massachusetts colonies had entered the country in spite of the attempts of the Dutch to drive them away. The first English settlement on the Connecticut was made in 1633 at *Windsor*. Others followed, and Hartford and Wethersfield were settled. In 1636, a large body of emigrants crossed the wilderness from the vicinity of Boston, led by Thomas Hooker, "the light of the western Churches."

THE PEQUOD WAR.

4. The infant towns on the Connecticut were soon harassed by the neighboring Indians, the *Pequods*. This savage tribe could muster seven hundred warriors. They courted the alliance of the Narragansetts, so

3. Who discovered the Connecticut river? Did they occupy the country? When, where, and by whom was Fort Saybrook built? When was the first English settlement made on the Connecticut? Where? What occurred in 1636?

4. What tribe harassed the colony? Why did they court an alliance with the Narragansetts? Who prevented it? How? Give an account of the expedition led by Mason. How were the defeated Indians treated? How many were slain? What was done with the rest? When were the settlements of New Haven and Connecticut united under one government?

that, with a united blow, the English might be swept from the ancient "hunting grounds." Roger Williams, at the risk of his life, met the Pequod ambassadors around the council-fires of the Narragansetts, and prevented the union. The Pequods were undaunted and continued to harass the settlers. A force of whites was organized, and, with two hundred and fifty Indian allies, were led by Captain Mason against the foe. At early dawn they attacked the principal Pequod fort on the river Thames. The Indians fought bravely, and victory hung in the balance. "We must burn them," shouted Mason, and he cast a fire-brand among the light mats of the wigwams. The encampment was soon all in a blaze. The English encompassed it and killed all who attempted to escape. About six hundred Indians, men, women and children, perished, most of them in the fire. Another body of three hundred was soon afterwards defeated. The rest of the tribe were pursued into their hiding-places and nearly all of them slain. Two hundred surrendered and were either dispersed among other tribes or sold into slavery. In 1668, the Connecticut settlements were united with New Haven under one government. For this purpose a charter had been granted by the King.

CHAPTER IV.

MARYLAND AND NEW YORK.

SECTION I.

COLONIZATION OF MARYLAND.

1. Sir GEORGE CALVERT, afterwards LORD BALTIMORE, a Roman Catholic, conceived the project of founding in America a commonwealth for his persecuted religious brethren. For this he persuaded Charles I. to give him all that part of Virginia lying north of the Potomac river. In compliment to the Queen, he called his province MARYLAND. Baltimore died before the completion of the patent, and the grant was made to his son, Cecilius, in 1632. In the royal charter the Proprietary was to be independent of the King, but the religious and political liberty of the colonists was guaranteed. The first emigrants, numbering about two hundred, sailed with Leonard Calvert in a vessel called the *Ark and the Dove*. They landed near the mouth of the Potomac (1633). Buying from the savages a large district in which an Indian town was included, they occupied the same, calling it *St. Mary's*. Within two years after their arrival they exported to New England ten thousand bushels of corn. The news of their good fortune induced others to join them. To every immigrant was given fifty acres of land. The Indians were friendly, liberty and land were given to all, and the colony prospered greatly.

1. Who was Sir George Calvert? What did Charles I. promise to him? To whom was the charter granted? What was guaranteed in it? Who conducted the first colony? Where and when did they land? What did they buy from the Indians? Did they prosper? How much land was given to each immigrant?

CLAYBORNE'S REBELLION.

2. The grant to Lord Baltimore, by which Virginia was dismembered, excited much complaint in that colony. An attempt was made by the planters to have the grant interfered with by the Governor, but without success. The opposition of WILLIAM CLAYBORNE was more serious. In 1631, with the consent of the King, he had established a trading settlement on Kent Island, situated near the centre of Maryland. He now claimed that island as his own, and refused to acknowledge Lord Baltimore's jurisdiction over it. He stirred up the neighboring Indians against Lord Baltimore's people, and incited the Kent Island settlers to violence. He was indicted for murder and piracy, and fled to England. There he still made war on Lord Baltimore's charter. Defeated in the courts, he returned to Maryland, and, taking advantage of the troubled times, (1644-5) kindled a rebellion and chased Calvert into Virginia. In 1646, Calvert returned, and, expelling Clayborne, re-established the Proprietary Government. In the following year Calvert died (1647).

THE TOLERATION ACT.

3. In 1649, the Maryland Assembly passed the famous *Toleration Act*. This procured for that colony the praise of being the first in America to declare and protect by law religious toleration. In 1654, Clayborne, assisted by the Maryland Puritans, again got control of affairs.

2. How did the Virginia colonists like the grant to Lord Baltimore? What was attempted by them? What did Clayborne claim? Of what was he guilty? What did he do in 1644? When did Calvert return?

3. When was the "Toleration Act" passed? Who got control of affairs in 1654? Who were now disfranchised? What followed? What was done by Fendall?

The Roman Catholics were now disfranchised. War ensued. Josias Fendall appeared as Lord Baltimore's lieutenant, and was acknowledged by the Catholics. In 1658, his authority being no longer disputed, he surrendered the government into the hands of the Assembly, and from it received a new commission.

CHARLES CALVERT.

4. At the restoration of Charles II. (1660), Charles Calvert, son of Cecilus, supported by the authority of the King, took possession of the province. Liberty was now restored, and peace and prosperity followed. In 1692, Charles was removed, and Andros appointed by the King to succeed him. In 1716, the Proprietary Government was restored, and lasted until the Revolution.

CONDITION OF MARYLAND (1660-1700).

5. In 1660, the population of Maryland was about twelve thousand. The people were industrious; money was scarce, and tobacco was the only medium of exchange. As in Virginia, the "Navigation Act" worked great injury to commerce. In Virginia an attempt was made to enhance the price by restraining the cultivation of tobacco. Maryland refused to adopt this measure. In 1671, a duty of two shillings was imposed on every hogshead of tobacco exported. About 1700, Maryland had thirty.

4. Who took possession of the province in 1660? What followed? Who was appointed to succeed Charles? When was the Proprietary Government restored?

5. What was the population of Maryland in 1660? What in 1700? What was the character of the people? When was Annapolis made the capital? Of what did the House of Burgesses consist? What was the pay of each member?

thousand inhabitants, and exported as much tobacco as Virginia. In 1699, ANNAPOLIS, instead of St. Mary's, became the capital, and all roads leading thither were ordered to be marked by notches cut on trees. The House of Burgesses consisted of four members from each county, and two from the capital; the daily pay of each being one hundred and sixty pounds of tobacco. Maryland, with the other colonies, was much infested by wolves. Even in 1715, a previous act was renewed offering three hundred pounds of tobacco for every wolf's head.

SECTION II.

FIRST SETTLEMENT OF NEW YORK.

1. New York became a part of the British dominions not by settlement but by conquest. It was first settled by the Dutch. HENRY HUDSON, an Englishman in the employment of a Dutch company, discovered (1609) the river known by his name. On his return to Holland, he described the country as "the most beautiful in the world." A ship was sent to that region by some merchants of Amsterdam to trade with the natives. A trading post was established (1614) on Manhattan's Island. In 1621, the Dutch West India Company was invested with a right to plant colonies on the American coast. Traffic with the natives increased; and in 1625, the cottages of New Amsterdam began to cluster around the block-house on Manhattan. In a short

1. How did New York become a part of the British dominions? By whom and when was the Hudson discovered? When was a trading post established on Manhattan Island? What began to appear on the island in 1625?

time forts were built, and colonies planted by the Dutch on the Delaware, Hudson, and Connecticut rivers.

TRouble WITH NEIGHBORS.

2. As early as 1633, the English had made a settlement on the Connecticut. In 1638, the Swedes planted a rival colony on the Delaware. The attempt to dislodge the English failed, and the Dutch finally surrendered to them the valley of the Connecticut. But the Swedes were overcome by the Dutch in battle, and completely conquered (1655). In 1642, an Indian war broke out. Kieft, the Dutch Governor, cruelly massacred some Indians who had fled to him for protection. This roused the neighboring tribes to terrible deeds of vengeance. Fearful atrocities were committed. War raged, and peace was not restored till 1646.

CONQUEST OF NEW NETHERLANDS.

3. Peter Stuyvesant, who succeeded Kieft, made a good Governor. Under him New Sweden was conquered, the Indians kept in awe, liberty maintained, immigration and trade encouraged. In 1664, Charles II. granted to his brother, the Duke of York, the territory between the Connecticut and Delaware rivers. In a few months thereafter an English squadron, commanded by Col. Nichols, came to enforce the grant. New Amsterdam was summoned to surrender. Stuyvesant at first refused, but finally, persuaded by the citi-

2. When did the English make a settlement on the Connecticut? Did they remain there? What was the fate of the Swedes on the Delaware? What occurred in 1642? What roused the savages to deeds of vengeance? When was peace restored?

3. What was done during the rule of Stuyvesant? What did Charles II. grant to the Duke of York? When? Give an account of the conquest of New Netherlands. What did the victors promise? What was now the case for the first time?

zens, yielded. The victors promised security to the customs, religion, institutions and possessions of the Dutch. "Early in October the Dutch and Swedes on the Delaware capitulated, and for the first time the whole Atlantic coast of the old thirteen States was in possession of England."

NEW JERSEY

4. Two months before the conquest of New Netherlands, the Duke of York had assigned to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret the land between the Hudson and Delaware. In honor of Carteret, the territory was called NEW JERSEY. The first and only permanent settlement that had yet been made in this region was at Bergen (1658).

NEW YORK TAKEN AND RESTORED.

5. NEW YORK, which was the name now given both to New Amsterdam and New Netherlands, had for its English Governor, Col. Nichols. His rule created much dissatisfaction. In 1673, a Dutch squadron approached the city. No resistance was made, and New York was taken. The people on the Delaware and Hudson submitted, and New York became once more a province of the Netherlands. It was, however, restored to the English in 1674 by a treaty of peace between Holland and England. Andros was appointed Governor, under a new patent to the Duke of York; but he oppressed the people, and was recalled (1680).

4. What land was assigned to Berkeley and Carteret? When was the first permanent settlement in New Jersey made? Where?

5. Who was the first English Governor of New York? What occurred in 1673? When was the colony restored to the English? What is said of Andros?

SECTION III.

CONDITION OF THE PROVINCE (1678).

1. At this time, New York city had a population of about 4000. Fifteen vessels traded there yearly, exchanging manufactured products for beef, lumber, tobacco, poultry, &c. The value of all the estates in the province was \$750,000. There were no beggars, and few paupers. The army of defence consisted of 2000 militia, 140 of whom were mounted.

TREATY WITH VIRGINIA AND THE FIVE NATIONS.

2. In 1683, Colonel Dougan, the Governor, organized a free government. It was during his rule that the celebrated treaty for mutual defence against the French between Virginia, New York, and the Five Nations, was formed. In 1685, the Duke of York became King of England. The colony, expecting a confirmation of its liberties, was rejoiced. But James forgot his promises to grant a new Constitution. He even took away old liberties, and, in 1688, insulted the colonists by appointing Andros Governor of New York and New England.

LEISLER'S REBELLION.

3. The tyranny of Andros excited a rebellion. In 1688, news of the abdication of James II. reached the colony. The Governor was absent. His deputy fled. Jacob Leisler headed a rising of the people, and, seizing the fort, assumed the government. For several years

1. What was the population of New York at this time? What is said of her commerce? Of real estate? Of what did the army consist?

2. What occurred in 1683? In 1685? How did James treat the colonists?

3. What excited a rebellion in 1688? Who headed the insurrection? What did he do? How long did his power last? What became of him?

he maintained his power. In 1691, a new Governor, appointed by King William III., arrived. Leisler was taken, tried for treason, condemned, and executed.

MASSACRE OF SCHENECTADY.

4. During the rule of Leisler (1689), a body of French and Indians went on an expedition against New York. They got lost in the snow, and came suddenly at night upon Schenectady. Falling upon the sleeping inhabitants, they slew men, women, and children. A few escaped, and their stories of the massacre roused the fiercest resentment. Expeditions were set on foot against both Montreal and Quebec, but nothing was accomplished.

CAPTAIN KIDD.

5. In 1696, piracy had become a crying evil in the colonies. Not a few piratical vessels were said to have sailed from New York, and Fletcher, the Governor, was suspected of being interested in the bloody business. Bellamont, the next Governor, was ordered to root out the evil. For this purpose he employed Captain Kidd; but he, being a leading cut-throat, only made matters worse. He was finally caught and hung (1701).

4. Give an account of the Massacre of Schenectady? Was any effort made to avenge the atrocity?

5. What had become a great evil in 1696? Of what was Fletcher accused? Who was Kidd? What was he employed to do? What did he prove to be?

CHAPTER V.

PENNSYLVANIA AND DELAWARE.

WILLIAM PENN.

1. PENNSYLVANIA was founded by WILLIAM PENN, a Quaker, and for the benefit of Quakers. Penn was born in 1644. At seventeen he was expelled from the University of Oxford for non-conformity. This so enraged his father that the boy was driven with blows from the house. On reaching manhood, he became a Quaker preacher. For this he was often imprisoned. His brethren were also much persecuted. Wishing to get a secure retreat for them, he obtained (1681) from Charles II. the grant of Pennsylvania. The charter constituted William Penn and his heirs "true and absolute proprietaries of the province of Pennsylvania, saving to the Crown their allegiance and the sovereignty." He and his deputies, with the consent of the freemen, were to make the laws.

PEACE AND LIBERTY.

2. Penn sent over his first colony in 1681. They settled on the Delaware, just above the mouth of the Schuylkill. The Swedish and Dutch settlers on the west bank of the Delaware were assured that their

1. By whom was Pennsylvania founded? With what design? Give an account of Penn. When did he obtain his grant from Charles II.? What did it constitute him and his heirs?

2. When and where did the first colony settle? Did they find any settlers there before them? Of what did Penn assure them? When did Penn arrive? What did he make known in an assembly of the people? What relations with the Indians did he establish? What is said of the condition of the colony in 1685? When did Penn bring over a new charter? How was it received? What occurred in 1701?

rights would be respected, while words of peace and kindness were sent to the Indians. In 1682, Penn with one hundred emigrants landed at New Castle. Soon afterwards he made known in an assembly of the people his intentions to institute a government perfectly free. This caused much joy. With the Indians he made a treaty under an elm-tree at Kensington. It was entered into without oath, and remained long unbroken. In 1683, he founded his capital, and called it PHILADELPHIA (*brotherly love*). Thus blessed with peace, the land of Penn grew so rapidly that, in 1685, the province contained twenty settlements, and Philadelphia two thousand inhabitants. In 1684, Penn went away to England and did not return until 1699. In the meantime he had suffered much from persecution. He brought with him a new charter for his people. It was gladly received by all but those occupying the then lower counties on the Delaware, who chose from this time to have an independent government of their own (1701).

SETTLEMENT OF DELAWARE.

3. The first permanent settlement in DELAWARE was made by some Swedes under Peter Minuits (1638). They bought a tract of land and built Fort Christiana, near the present site of Wilmington. The Dutch, on Manhattan, viewed this settlement with jealousy. In 1651, they built a fort within five miles of Christiana. This was soon attacked and destroyed by the Swedes. A war now broke out between the two colonies, and it

3. Where and when was the first permanent settlement made in Delaware? Who were jealous of this colony? What occurred in 1651? What was the result of the war? Into whose hands did the colony pass in 1664? Into whose in 1682?

ended in the complete conquest of the Swedes (1654). Ten years afterwards (1664), it passed with the Netherlands into the hands of the Duke of York, who in 1682 released to Penn his claim to it.

MASON AND DIXON'S LINE.

4. For a long time disputes arose about the dividing line between Maryland and Pennsylvania. This was at length determined by MASON and DIXON, two surveyors chosen for the purpose. The line they run is celebrated as being the division line of what were once known as the Free and Slave States. Penn's example of moderation was followed by his people, and Pennsylvania increased rapidly in wealth and population.

CHAPTER VI.

THE CAROLINAS AND GEORGIA.

SECTION I.

SETTLEMENT OF NORTH CAROLINA.

1. The French under Coligny and the English under Raleigh made no permanent settlement in the CAROLINAS. About 1645, a party of Virginians settled in the region north of Albemarle Sound. There, governing themselves, they lived in peace and plenty. In 1663,

4. By whom was the boundary line between Maryland and Pennsylvania run? Of what States was this afterwards the division line? Was Penn's example followed by his people? With what result?

1. What occurred in 1645? What grant was obtained from the King in 1663? By whom? Through this charter what did the Proprietaries claim? What did Berkeley do? Why did the colonists break out in open revolt? When was the first Assembly convoked? By whom? What is said of Locke's Constitution? What other county was formed now?

Lord Clarendon and others obtained from the King a grant of the region between the 31st and 36th degrees of north latitude. By virtue of this charter, the Proprietaries claimed jurisdiction over the settlers on Albemarle Sound. William Berkeley, one of the patentees, Governor of Virginia, was authorized to take care of them. He visited the colony, and, instituting a civil government, put William Drummond at the head of it. The colonists wanted to hold their lands on the same tenure as they were held in Virginia. This was at first refused by the Proprietaries, and the people broke out in open revolt. This state of things continuing for two years, their petition was granted, and a new Constitution given them. In 1669, Governor Stephens convoked the first Assembly under this Constitution. Shortly after this, another Constitution, framed by Locke, the philosopher, was sent over. It was found totally inapplicable, and was soon abandoned. Meantime, some settlers on Cape Fear river were formed into a separate county, called Clarendon, and North Carolina was divided into two counties.

CIVIL DISCORD.

2. In 1677, the people, dissatisfied with the Government, rose in revolt and imprisoned the Proprietary officers. John Culpepper, the leader of the rebels, controlled affairs for two years. At the end of that time he was sent to England and tried for high treason, but was acquitted. For several years the colony governed itself. In 1683, Seth Sothel, one of the proprietors,

2. When and why did the people rise in revolt? Who now controlled affairs? What became of him? Give an account of the rule of Sothel. When was he banished?

was appointed Governor. He pillaged the colonists and cheated his proprietary associates. After six years of suffering, the people again rose and deposed him. At his own request he was tried by the Assembly, and banished forever (1688).

CONDITION OF EARLY SETTLERS.

3. North Carolina was settled by the "freest of the free." Careless of sects, colleges, or lawyers, they enjoyed liberty of conscience and personal independence. Without cities or townships, without roads, the early settlers lived scattered in lonely farms; but without care and without restraint. The first church was built in 1705, the first court-house in 1722, and the first printing-press was established in 1754.

WAR WITH THE TUSCARORAS.

4. Sothel was succeeded by Philip Ludwell. The colony grew; and in 1712 its great prosperity excited the jealous fears of the Tuscarora Indians. A general massacre was plotted, and twelve hundred warriors entered into a secret league to execute it. At the appointed time, the savages entered the houses of the planters, and slew men, women, and children. At Roanoke alone, one hundred and thirty-seven of the settlers were butchered. Some escaping spread the alarm, and the remaining settlements prepared for defence. To the appeal for aid, the colony of South Carolina

3. What was the character of the early settlers? What was their mode of life? When was the first church built? The first court-house?

4. Who succeeded Sothel? What was the cause of the war with the Tuscaroras? Give an account of the attempt at a general massacre. Who brought aid from South Carolina? What did he do? What became of the Tuscaroras?

quickly responded. Colonel Barnwell, with six hundred militia and three hundred and sixty Indians (1712), came to their relief. Chasing the savages for two hundred miles through the wilderness, he overtook them and inflicted a bloody defeat. Shortly afterwards, they suffered another defeat. Disheartened, the Tuscaroras migrated northwards, and united with the Five Nations, making the sixth of that confederacy.

THE COLONY BECOMES A ROYAL PROVINCE.

5. Until 1729, North and South Carolina remained under the same Proprietaries, but with different governments. In 1729, the Proprietaries sold their rights to the King. After that, the colonies were completely separated. The first Royal Governor of North Carolina was George Barrington. At first, from civil discord, the colony grew slowly. In 1694, there were only seven hundred and eighty-nine names on the list of taxable inhabitants. In 1710, the whole population was six thousand. Debts were generally paid in hides, tallow, and other productions. In 1775, the number of inhabitants was estimated at two hundred and fifty thousand.

SECTION II.

SOUTH CAROLINA: FIRST SETTLEMENT (1670.)

1. The first permanent settlement in South Carolina was made under the conduct of Robert Sayle, in 1670,

5. Until what time were the Carolinas under the same Proprietaries? What occurred then? Who was the first Royal Governor? What was the condition of the colony in 1694? In 1710? In 1775?

1. When, where, and by whom was the first permanent settlement made in South Carolina? Who was the John Smith of the colony? What plan of government did they at first adopt? With what success?

at Port Royal. With Sayle came Joseph West, who was the John Smith of the colony. The colonists were disposed to give the grand model of Locke a fair trial. They brought it with them and tried hard to thrive according to the plan it marked out, but they soon had to abandon it.

SPANISH HOSTILITY.

2. In 1671, settlers along the banks of the Ashley and Cooper rivers had old Charleston as their trading centre. In 1680, the capital was removed to the site of the present city of CHARLESTON. The prosperity of the colony excited the jealous hostility of the Spaniards at St. Augustine. They tampered with the servants and stirred up the neighboring Indians to murder. The activity of their emissaries was not in vain. An insurrection broke out, and the Indians approached in strength. The Spaniards hastened to lend a helping hand. Accident and the promptness of the Governor saved the infant State. A war at home stopped the Indians, while the Spanish column, hearing that a force was coming to meet it, beat a hasty retreat.

IMMIGRATION FROM NEW NETHERLANDS AND FRANCE.

3. The conquest of New Netherlands by the English caused many of the Hollanders to emigrate. In 1673, several companies of Dutch immigrants arrived in South Carolina; and in a few years quite a settlement of

2. What settlements had old Charleston as their trade centre in 1671? When was the capital removed? What excited the hostility of the Spaniards? What did they do to make trouble? What did they effect? How was the insurrection suppressed?

3. What caused many Hollanders to emigrate from New Netherlands? What occurred in 1673? What followed the revocation of the Edict of Nantes? How were they received? What won for them the good-will of the English?

them was established on the Ashley river. The revocation of the "Edict of Nantes" (1685) caused many of the French Protestants to emigrate to Carolina. The numbers and wealth of the strangers excited the envy of the colonists. For some time they were denied the rights of free-born Englishmen. Soon, their mildness and patience won the good-will of all, and they were admitted to a share of the franchises of the other planters.

YEMASEE WAR.

4. In 1715, the Yemasee attacked the settlements. At the first onset, ninety persons were massacred. The Carawbas, Cherokees and Creeks now took part in the contest, and fully seven thousand Indian braves threatened the colony. Governor Craven, with a force of one thousand two hundred men, advanced to meet them. A battle was fought, the Indians were defeated, and the survivors driven into Florida.

CONDITION OF THE COLONY.

5. South Carolina now gradually increased in wealth and population. For awhile, her settlements were near the seaboard. When the fertility of her interior lands was discovered, immigration poured in from the more northern provinces. *Rice* was introduced in 1698, and its culture soon became a great source of wealth. *Cotton* was planted as early as 1702; but not much attention was paid to it till the invention of the cotton-

4. What occurred in 1715? What tribes took part in the contest? By whom were they defeated, and what became of the survivors?

5. What part of the territory was first settled? When did immigrants go into the interior? When was rice introduced? When was cotton planted? When was much attention given to it?

gin. In 1776, the population of the colony reached 248,000.

SECTION III.

GEORGIA: FIRST SETTLEMENT (1733).

1. Georgia was settled long after the Carolinas. The Spaniards of Florida, who claimed the country, were so near, and the native Indians so warlike, that emigrants were afraid to go there. The first settlement was made under the leadership of GENERAL OGLETHORPE, at SAVANNAH, in 1733. Oglethorpe was an accomplished soldier and statesman, and a sincere friend of humanity. To him and other trustees, George II. had granted, for a term of years, the region between the Savannah and Altamaha rivers. With the design of securing homes for the suffering English poor, the grant had been obtained; and, to carry out the project, money had been raised by contribution in England.

TREATY WITH THE INDIANS.

2. After landing, and building a fort, Oglethorpe set to work to win the good-will of the Indians. He told them he came, not to take, but to buy, homes for his people. The Creek Indians, pleased with his moderation, entered into a treaty with him, and became his fast friends. Soon after the conclusion of this treaty, Oglethorpe returned to England, taking with him the King and Queen of the Creeks.

1. Why was it so long before Georgia was settled? Who was Oglethorpe? What did he do? What was granted to him and other trustees by George III? For what purpose?

2. What did Oglethorpe first do? What kind of a treaty with the Indians did he make?

MORE IMMIGRANTS ARRIVE.

3. In the following year, more English paupers arrived. It began to appear that a different kind of population was needed. In 1735, a large body of Germans and Scotch Highlanders arrived. In the following year came JOHN WESLEY, the celebrated Methodist divine; about this time also GEORGE WHITEFIELD. Through his efforts, means were raised to build an Orphan Asylum at Savannah. The early settlers were indeed various. Among the wretched whom English charity sent over, there must, of course, have been many vicious persons.

WARS WITH THE SPANIARDS.

4. Oglethorpe built several forts along the banks of the Savannah. He feared the Spaniards. They sent him word to take his people north of St. Helena Sound. He refused, and went to England for advice and assistance. He returned in command of six hundred men for the frontier defence of Georgia and South Carolina. During his absence, the Spaniards had tried to detach from him the Creeks, but without success. Oglethorpe was now ready, and he determined to strike the first blow. In 1740, with some force, he marched against St. Augustine. Two forts were taken, and St. Augustine was held for some time in a state of siege, but nothing was gained. In 1742, the Spaniards took the field with 3000 men. It was their inten-

3. What is said of the pauper immigrants? Who came in 1735? What did Whitefield do?

4. Why did Oglethorpe build several forts? Where did he get assistance? What Indians did the Spaniards try to detach from him? Give an account of his first campaign against them. What occurred in 1742? How was danger averted? Give an account of the subsequent life of Oglethorpe.

tion, after destroying the settlements on the Savannah, to proceed against the Carolinas and Virginia. The movement was so sudden that for a while the fate of Georgia hung in the balance. There was no time to get assistance from the Carolinas, and Oglethorpe had to rely upon his own resources. With seven hundred whites and a large body of Indian allies, he advanced to meet the foe. By a most adroit stratagem he led the Spanish commander to think that if he came up with him, the Spaniards would all be taken. Whereupon he set fire to the fort he occupied, and fled so hastily that a number of cannon fell into the hands of Oglethorpe. Thus was the colony saved by the genius of Oglethorpe. After the retreat of the Spaniards, he returned to England. In 1775, he was offered the command of the British forces in America. He declined the honor. He died in 1785, two years after Georgia had gained her independence.

CIVIL GOVERNMENT.

5. From the first, the colony increased rapidly in numbers; still it was not prosperous. Under the charter, negro slavery was prohibited. The introduction of rum was forbidden. But slave labor seemed indispensable; so George Whitefield thought. The trustees listened to no complaint. In 1740, they made a report in which it appeared that 2500 emigrants had been sent over, \$500,000 had been expended, and yet the colony was not self-supporting. The military tenure by which the settlers held their land was another cause of slow

5. Did the colony increase rapidly in numbers? Why did it not prosper? What report was made in 1740? What was another cause of slow growth? When did the dissatisfaction cease? What laws were repealed?

growth. There was much dissatisfaction, until the charter was given up to the Crown, and the inhabitants were permitted to enjoy the rights pertaining to the citizens of other colonies. The laws in regard to slaves and rum were now repealed, and Georgia set forward rapidly in the path of progress.

CHAPTER VII.

NEW ENGLAND.

NEW ENGLAND CONFEDERACY.

1. The New England colonies in 1643 could boast of a population of 20,000. Being threatened by the Dutch on one side and the French and Indians on the other, they entered into a league, for mutual protection, under the name of "The United Colonies of New England." The general interests of the union were to be entrusted to a Board of Commissioners consisting of two from each colony. The confederacy lasted for nearly fifty years, and was of great benefit to New England.

THE REGICIDES AND CHARLES II.

2. The death of Cromwell (1658) was a sad blow to the Puritans. The people of New England admired and loved him, the Marylanders feared him, and the

1. What was the population of New England in 1643? Give an account of the New England Confederacy. How long did it last?

2. Why was the death of Cromwell a sad blow to the Puritans? Who were Whaley and Goffe? How were they treated in New England? Did Charles, upon ascending the throne, keep his promise to the New England colonies? What was one of the conditions upon which amnesty was granted?

Virginians hated him as the enemy of their Church and King. In 1660, Whaley and Goffe, members of the court that had condemned the King to death, arrived in Boston. They travelled through the colony unmolested, and were kindly treated. In the meantime Charles II. began his reign. Hearing that the regicides were in New England, he sent an order for their arrest; but they were not taken. Soon after his accession to the throne, Charles had promised to the New England colonies a confirmation of their civil and religious liberty. In 1662, the agents of Massachusetts returned from England, bringing a letter from the King confirming the colonial charter, and granting amnesty to all who had not been attainted of high treason. His clemency was coupled with conditions. One of these was that the Church of England should be tolerated.

KING PHILIP'S WAR (1675).

3. About the year 1675, a conspiracy was entered into by the Indians to destroy the English. Of this KING PHILIP was said to be the head. Sassamon, an Indian preacher, revealed the secret, and was murdered by Philip. Hostilities soon began. Nearly all of the New England tribes joined Philip, and the frontiers witnessed many desperate fights. "The laborer in the field, the reapers as they went forth to harvest, men as they went to mill, the shepherd boy among the sheep, were shot down by skulking foes." The Indian country was invaded, and a terrible blow inflicted. One by one Philip's allies were slain or conquered.

3. What conspiracy was entered into about 1675? Who was killed by Philip for revealing the secret? Who joined Philip? What was the character of the war? How did it end? What became of his wife?

With but a remnant, he fought on. At last his wife and son were taken, and the latter transported to Bermuda and sold as a slave. "My heart breaks," said the chief; "now I am ready to die." Soon afterwards he was surrounded in a swamp and killed. His death virtually ended the war.

CHARTERS LOST AND GAINED.

4. In a controversy with the Crown, Massachusetts lost her charter (1684). Andros, the despotic Governor of New England and New York, took away the charters of Rhode Island and Connecticut. When news of the abdication of James II. reached Boston, Andros was seized, imprisoned, and finally sent home for trial (1689). King William allowed the two States to resume their charters. A new one was granted to Massachusetts (1692), in which was reserved to the Crown the right of appointing the Governor and all military officers. Religious toleration also was required for all but Papists.

SALEM WITCHCRAFT.

5. The Quakers and witches were frequently objects of persecution in New England. As early as 1646, *witches* had been tried. Excitement upon the subject occurred from time to time, but during the administration of Sir William Phipps (1692), it reached a point of fury that threatened the very life of the colony (Mas-

4. When did Massachusetts lose her charter? Who took away the charters of Rhode Island and Connecticut? How was Andros treated in 1689? What did King William do?

5. What is said of the early persecution of witches in New England? What occurred during the administration of Sir William Phipps? Give an account of the progress of the delusion? How many lives were destroyed? Was much suffering caused by it? Were the leading instigators punished?

sachusetts). It first broke out at the house of Mr. Parris, minister of Salem. Two children, little girls, were strangely affected. The Indian servant was accused of bewitching them. She was whipped until she acknowledged the charge. Others were accused; the alarm spread, and the occasion was seized to gratify private animosities. Twenty persons were hung, and many more were imprisoned and tortured. At last, a reaction took place, and the trials ceased; but the leading prosecutors went unpunished.

CAPTURE OF LOUISBURG.

6. During the war with France, called KING GEORGE'S WAR, an expedition was fitted out for the capture of Louisburg. This was the principal fortress of the French, and was on the island of Cape Breton. It was the hiding-place of the privateers that took the fishing vessels of the New Englanders, and was indeed the bulwark of the French power in Canada. Colonel Pepperel, with a large force from the New England colonies, laid siege to the place and took it (1745). When the surrender was known in France, a heavy naval force was sent to retake it. The fleet was prevented by storms and other causes from effecting anything. Two years afterwards (1748), Louisburg, by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, was restored to the French.

6. What and where was Louisburg? Why was it a place of importance? When and by whom was it taken? Was any effort made by the French to recover it? When and why was it restored to the French?

CHAPTER VIII.

THE MISSISSIPPI AND OHIO VALLEYS.

SECTION I.

DISCOVERIES IN THE WEST.

1. For some time after the establishment of English settlements in America, the colonists thought that the South Sea was just beyond the mountains; though nearly one hundred years previous, Spanish adventurers had crossed the wilderness, and stood upon the banks of the Mississippi. The English first heard of the interior of the continent from the French missionaries. These were Jesuits, who, with a desire of converting the heathen Indians around the northern lakes, wandered far beyond the haunts of civilized man into the country of the savages. Foremost of these was MARQUETTE. He heard of the Mississippi through the Sioux Indians, and, taking Joliet, another priest, with him, he set out in search of it. Embarking in two canoes (1673), they coasted the northern shore of Lake Michigan, and entered Green Bay. The Indians whom they questioned on their way said that the river was in a region of intolerable heat, and the road to it was guarded by fierce monsters. The Frenchmen went on, and, descending the Wisconsin, soon beheld the MISSISSIPPI ("father of waters"). Floating with the stream until reaching the mouth of the Arkansas, they thence ascended the river and returned to Green Bay.

1. Where did the first English settlers think the South Sea was? How long before this had the Mississippi been discovered? From whom did the English first hear of the Mississippi valley? Give an account of the journey of Marquette.

LA SALLE.

2. In 1678, Louis XIV., of France, issued a commission to LA SALLE to make explorations in the West. He embarked on Lake Ontario in a sail-boat. The boat was soon lost, but he continued the journey in canoes. Meeting with many misfortunes, he at last gave up, and returned before he reached the Mississippi. A Jesuit named Hennepin, with a small party, pushed on, and succeeded in reaching the great river. Encouraged by his account, La Salle tried again, and was successful. He explored the Mississippi to its mouth, where he took possession of the country in the name of his royal master, calling it after him LOUISIANA. Returning to France, he gave an account of his success, and was empowered by the King to conduct a colonizing party through the Gulf of Mexico to Louisiana. He crossed the ocean and traversed the Gulf, missing the mouth of the Mississippi. Landing in Texas, he set out by land in search of the "hidden river." Reaching Mexico, he changed his course, determined, if necessary, to go forward till Canada was reached. His men, maddened by despair, murdered him, and abandoned the attempt (1683).

LOUISIANA—FIRST SETTLEMENT.

3. In order to get ahead of the Spaniards, who claimed the country, the French King (1699) sent out another party of colonists under D'Iberville. He made

2. What commission was issued to La Salle? Give an account of his first attempt. Who went on and reached the great river? Give an account of La Salle's second expedition. Of his third. When was he murdered?

3. When and by whom was D'Iberville sent? With what design? Where did he make a settlement? What was the number of colonists on the Mississippi in 1717? What retarded the progress of the colonies? When was New Orleans laid out?

a settlement and established a station where Natchez now stands. Soon other settlements were made, and in 1717, the number of colonists on the Mississippi reached seven hundred. For a while, however, the colonies were controlled by speculators in search of gold; and hence they grew slowly. In 1718, NEW ORLEANS was laid out, and so called from the Duke of Orleans. Soon afterwards agriculture was encouraged, the culture of tobacco, indigo, and rice was introduced, and crops were raised for exportation.

CHICKASAW WAR.

4. Until 1729, there was uninterrupted peace with the Indians. But the Natchez, a neighboring tribe, becoming uneasy at the increase of the whites, surprised the fort and slew the inmates, sparing the women and children and two mechanics. To avenge this atrocity, in the following year a force from New Orleans attacked and almost destroyed the Natchez. It was then discovered that the Chickasaws had set on the Natchez. In 1736, an attempt was made to punish the savage mischief-makers. Forces from all the settlements on the river were to meet in the Chickasaw country at a given time. Those from the North under D'Artaquette, the Governor of Illinois, were the first to arrive. Without waiting for the others, he advanced against the savages. He found them strongly posted behind lines of fortifications. The first two lines were carried by storm, but the third resisted every effort.

4. How long was peace unbroken? When was blood first spilt? Who had instigated the massacre? What was attempted in 1736? What forces were to assemble? Give an account of the defeat of D'Artaquette. Who arrived five days afterwards? What did he do?

The Indian allies fled, and D'Artaquette and his men fell into the hands of the victors. Five days afterwards Bienville arrived with a force from New Orleans. It was too late. The savages had strengthened their position. Foiled in every effort to dislodge them, he threw his cannon into the river and started for home. In 1739, another attempt was made, but nothing was accomplished. At last, a peace was concluded which remained unbroken until 1762.

SECTION II.

THE APPROACH OF WAR.

1. The treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (1748) left the boundaries between the British and French possessions in America still undefined. The French had made settlements and erected forts from Canada to New Orleans. Through their Jesuit missionaries they had made treaties with most of the Indian tribes in this region. The English colonists gradually awoke to a sense of the impending danger, and, with feelings of growing hostility, wanted but a pretext to begin the conflict. This was soon furnished.

SEIZURE OF AN ENGLISH POST.

2. The Ohio Company had obtained from the King a grant of land on and near the Ohio river. For the pur-

1. Did the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle determine the boundaries between the British and French possessions in America? Where had the French erected a line of forts? How was this regarded by the English?

2. What had the King granted to the Ohio Company? What occurred in 1752? What message did Duwiddie send to the French commander? Who bore the message? How old was Washington then? Whose attention had he already attracted?

pose of carrying on a fur trade with the Indians and settling the country, trading posts had been established in that region. One of these was broken up (1752) by the French, and the traders found there were carried into captivity. When Dinwiddie, the Lieutenant-Governor of Virginia, learned this, he sent a message to the French commander, demanding a withdrawal of his men from the territory of Virginia. GEORGE WASHINGTON was chosen to bear the message. At that time he was not twenty-two years of age, but he had already attracted the attention of the leading men in Virginia. At the age of nineteen he had been appointed Adjutant-General, and in this capacity had won golden opinions.

WASHINGTON'S JOURNEY AND FIRST FIGHT.

3. On the 31st of October, 1753, Washington set out on his perilous journey. Through many difficulties he finally reached Waterford, and delivered his message to the French commander. St. Pierre replied that he was acting under orders, and intended to seize every Englishman within the valley of the Ohio. Washington saw that the French were making preparations for the spring campaign. The answer of St. Pierre and his warlike preparations demanded prompt action. By Washington's advice, thirty-three laborers were sent to build a fort at the present site of Pittsburg. Before it was half done a French force arrived and took possession. Washington was then on his way with a small party to protect the workmen. Hearing of the capture

3. When did Washington set out on his journey? What was the reply of St. Pierre? What demanded prompt action? To what point were laborers sent to build a fort? What did the French do? How did Washington anticipate the foe?

of the place, and also that a French party was seeking him, he determined to strike the first blow. Coming upon them unawares, he killed or captured all but one.

FIGHT AT GREAT MEADOWS.

4. Thence, falling back to a half finished fort in the *Great Meadows*, he there awaited a large force of the enemy advancing. Before they arrived there, he completed his fort, calling it Fort Necessity. Upon arriving, the French assailed furiously his stockade defence. Greatly outnumbered, Washington fought for ten hours. Next morning he capitulated and marched out with the honors of war.

CHAPTER IX.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

SECTION I.

PREPARATIONS FOR CONFLICT.

1. No British flag now waved west of the Alleghenies. It was necessary for the English colonists to be up and doing. A meeting of delegates from Virginia and the colonies north of the Potomac was held at Albany (1754) to devise a plan of union. The one adopted suited neither the British Ministry nor the colonial Assemblies. It was now determined that the war should be carried on with British troops, the

4. What fort did he build on the Great Meadows? For what purpose? How long did Washington defend the fort? Upon what terms did he surrender?

1. What steps were taken by the English colonies for defence? How was the plan of union liked by the British Ministry? How was it determined to carry on the war?

colonies assisting in the way each thought best. In the spring of 1755, GEN. BRADDOCK was sent to take charge of the Royal forces. Upon consultation with the colonial Governors, it was determined to strike the enemy at several points.

BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT (1755).

2. The French had built a strong fort at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, and called it *Fort Duquesne*. Against it an army marched, commanded by Braddock. With great skill, he conducted his column through the mountain wilderness. Washington, his aide-de-camp, cautioned him to send men ahead to scour the woods, but Braddock would not heed the warning. When within eight miles of the hostile post, he fell into an ambush. His working parties were driven in, and an unseen foe poured a deadly fire into his flanks. The Regulars, unaccustomed to such a mode of fighting, broke and fled. "The *Virginia Rangers* alone retained their presence of mind." Braddock was wounded, and Washington was left with the Rangers to save the army from destruction. Of two thousand men, seven hundred and seventy-four were lost. Four days after the battle, Braddock died. The news of this disaster excited alarm throughout America. The Indians, flushed with victory, would now ravage the border. Braddock was to have aided Governor Shirley, who led an expedition against Niagara. His defeat diminished Shirley's strength and disheartened his men.

2. Against what point did Braddock lead a column? With what success? What was the cause of his defeat? What had Washington advised him to do? What was the extent of Braddock's loss? Who saved the remnant of his army? How was the news of this disaster received throughout America? Why? What did Shirley expect to do? What did he do?

After reaching Oswego, and rebuilding the fort there, the column withdrew and returned to Albany.

EXPEDITION AGAINST CROWN POINT (1755).

3. Gen. Johnson, with three thousand four hundred men, marched against the French fort at *Crown Point*. Upon reaching the southern shore of Lake George, he waited for stores and artillery. Meantime, Dieskau, with a force of French and Indians, approached. Col. Williams, with a small body, was sent to meet him. Williams was surprised, and hence easily beaten. Dieskau pursued, but upon reaching Johnson's camp he was repulsed. Johnson did not follow up his victory. He merely erected Fort William Henry and garrisoned it. On the approach of winter he disbanded the rest of his men.

WAR DECLARED.

4. Up to this time there was a nominal peace between France and England, though war had been raging for some time between their colonies. In May, 1756, war was formally declared. Lord Loudoun was appointed Governor-General of the English colonies (1756). Little was attempted by him. MONTCAULM, the new French Governor, took Fort Oswego (1756).

EVENTS OF 1757.

5. In June, Lord Loudoun, with a force of one thousand men, started on an expedition against Louisburg, but

3. Who attempted to take Crown Point? Where did he wait for stores and artillery? What happened while delayed there? Did he follow up his victory? What did he do on the approach of winter?

4. Was there yet a nominal peace between France and England? When was war formally declared? What did Lord Loudoun do? What place was taken by Montcalm? When?

5. What place did Loudoun start to take? With what success? By whom was Fort William Henry taken? What is said of Gen. Webb? How was one of the terms of surrender violated?

was so slow that he accomplished nothing. On the 2d of August, Montcalm, with six thousand French and one thousand seven hundred Indians, invested Fort William Henry. It was defended by Colonel Munroe, with two thousand two hundred men. Expecting aid from Gen. Webb at Fort Edward, only fourteen miles off, Munroe fought till half his guns were bursted and his ammunition nearly exhausted. Webb, instead of sending aid, advised him, through a messenger, to surrender. This he was finally compelled to do. One of the terms of the surrender was a safe escort for the prisoners to Fort Edward. On their way there they were attacked by the Indian allies of the French, and nearly all of them massacred.

SECTION II.

EVENTS OF 1758.

1. So many defeats forced a change of Ministry. WILLIAM PITT was put at the head of affairs. Loudoun was recalled. The colonies were assured that their war expenditures would be repaid, and that their officers should rank with British officers of the same grade. Confidence was restored, and soon General Abererombie, Loudoun's successor, had an army of fifty thousand men. On the 20th of May, Louisburg surrendered to an English force under Amherst and Wolfe. An army of fifteen thousand men, under Howe, approached *Fort Ticonderoga*. While advancing in dis-

1. What caused a change of Ministry? Who was put at the head of affairs? What assurance did he give the Americans? How large an army was raised? When and to whom did Louisburg surrender? Give an account of the attempt upon Ticonderoga. What expedition was conducted by Gen. Forbes? What did he finally determine to do? What did Washington do?

order through the woods, a small body of French suddenly fell upon them. They were driven off, but Howe was killed. Abercrombie succeeded him in the command. In a few days he assaulted the enemy's works, and, meeting with a bloody repulse, fell back to Albany. The third expedition, under Forbes, went against Fort Duquesne. General Forbes attempted to cut a new road through the forest. This caused much delay. The Indians, too, harassed the march. So little progress was made that it was thought best to give up the undertaking. Washington, however, got permission to go on with his Virginians. At his approach, the French set fire to the works and fled. Washington called the post *Fort Pitt*; and, leaving a garrison there, he returned to his native State. Shortly afterwards he was elected to the House of Burgesses, and was received there with distinguished honor.

CAPTURE OF TICONDEROGA AND NIAGARA.

2. The campaign of 1759 was commenced with the determination to expel the French power from Canada. In the campaign of the preceding year, the English force in America had gained considerable ground, while in other quarters of the globe the British had almost everywhere triumphed over the French. In the opening of the campaign of 1759, General Amherst took Ticonderoga, meeting with very little resistance; while Colonel Johnson, on the 24th of July, after a bloody general battle, got possession of Niagara.

2. With what determination was the campaign in 1759 commenced? What had happened in the preceding year? What place was taken by Amherst? What, by Col. Johnson?

EXPEDITION AGAINST QUEBEC.

3. QUEBEC up to this time, had proved impregnable. It was now commanded by the brave MONTCALM, who occupied a position below the town with a strong force, while troops to the number of ten thousand covered the place from above. After several ineffectual attempts to reduce the place, WOLFE, the commander of the English expedition, determined, if possible, to take the *heights of Abraham*, which commanded the town. Secrecy was necessary to insure success, as but a small number of men was needed to repel a force attempting the ascent of an almost perpendicular precipice, one hundred and seventy-five feet high.

THE FALL OF QUEBEC.

4. Under the cover of darkness, on the night of the 12th of September, the hazardous enterprise was commenced. Embarking his army in boats, Wolfe dropped down the stream. The French sentinels on the bank challenged them as they passed, but answering in French, they escaped discovery. Landing at the foot of the heights, the British ascended by a narrow path to the top, where a French guard was met and dispersed. Assembling his forces now upon the elevated plain, Wolfe engaged with Montcalm, who, aware that a general engagement was inevitable, had hastened to meet him. Wolfe, though feeble from a recent attack of sickness, led on his men with great gallantry. At first he was wounded in the wrist; but, binding this with his handker-

3. Who commanded at Quebec? Under what General was an attempt made to reduce the place? What plan was finally determined upon?

4. What was attempted on the night of the 12th of September? How were the Heights of Abraham taken? Give an account of the battle. What was the behavior and fate of the opposing commanders?

chief, he continued the fight until struck down by a ball entering his groin. Montcalm behaved no less gallantly. He was soon, however, mortally wounded, and fell fighting at the head of his men. His second in command also fell, and the French began to retreat. The dying Wolfe was aroused by the cry, "They fly!" "Who fly?" he asked. "The French," was the response. "Then," said he, "I die in peace," and expired. In five days after the battle the city surrendered.

CLOSE OF THE WAR (1763).

5. In 1760, Montreal fell into the hands of the English, and not long after all the French posts in Canada. This ended the war. Three years afterwards (1763), Nova Scotia, Canada, and the Isle of Cape Breton, and all other islands in the Gulf and near the St. Lawrence, were ceded to the British Crown.

SECTION III.

CHEROKEE WAR.

1. The Cherokees, who dwelt in fair valleys near the head-waters of the Savannah and Tennessee rivers, were ever the friends of the English. In 1757, they had volunteered to protect the frontier south of the Potomac. Yet, after winning honor in the service of the State, they would have returned unrewarded but for the gen-

5. When did Montreal fall into the hands of the English? What was ceded to the British Crown in 1763?

1. Where did the Cherokees dwell? Were they friendly to the English? How did they show it? What was the cause of the Cherokee War? What part did Lyttleton take in it? Who was among the militia assembled at Congaree?

erosity of Washington. In 1758, they bore an active part against the French, and being again neglected, took what they needed on their way home. The Virginian backwoodsmen, resenting this, caught and killed several "beloved men" of the Cherokees. Retaliation followed. An attempt at reconciliation was defeated by Lyttleton, Governor of South Carolina. Aconostata and the thirty honored Cherokees who came to secure peace were ill-treated. War now broke out. Among the militia who assembled at Congaree was FRANCIS MARION, as yet an untried soldier, "reserved and silent, small in stature and of slender frame."

INVASION OF THE CHEROKEE COUNTRY.

2. Colonel Montgomery, with a force of nineteen hundred men, entered the Cherokee country in June (1760). Little Keowee, an Indian village, was surprised, and nearly all the men were slain. The vale of Keowee, on the head-waters of the Savannah, was the delight of the Cherokees. Extending for twenty miles, its fertile soil afforded abundant crops of maize and beans to the inhabitants of the villages which lined the sides of the adjacent hills. Every village within this lovely region was plundered and set on fire, while the Indians from the tops of the mountains stood gazing at the flames.

FALL OF FORT LOUDOUN.

3. These moving westward, Montgomery continued his march. At Crow's Creek, in the valley of the Little

2. When and by whom was the Cherokee country invaded? What was done at Little Keowee? Where is the vale of Keowee? Describe it. What was the fate of its Indian inhabitants?

3. Give an account of the ambuscade in which Montgomery fell. Of the fall of Fort Loudoun and the fate of its garrison. When did the Cherokee War end?

Tennessee, he fell into an ambush, and, after a loss of twenty killed and seventy-six wounded, drove off the Indians. His object was to relieve Fort Loudoun, on the Tennessee river, then in a state of siege. But from this point he retreated, and Fort Loudoun surrendered to the savages (Aug. 8., 1760). Of its garrison, twenty-three privates and four officers were butchered in cold blood, in revenge for an equal number of hostages slaughtered at Fort George; and the rest, nearly two hundred, were distributed among the tribes. In 1761, another invasion of the Cherokee country took place. The savages now sued for peace; and upon its return, the valley of the Tennessee was secured to the English.

PONTIAC'S WAR.

4. Though there was peace with the French, their old Indian allies did not despair of holding the valley of the Ohio. In 1763, Pontiac, an Ottawa chief, got his own people to unite with the Miamis, Shawnees, and several other tribes, for the destruction of the English in the West. The whites were taken unawares, and many of the English posts were captured. At least one hundred traders were massacred, and twenty thousand persons in Western Virginia driven from their homes by fear of the savages. For some time the war continued. At last, divisions among the confederate savages left Pontiac defenceless, and peace was concluded with twenty-two tribes (1764). Pontiac refused to sign the treaty, and tried to hatch another plot, but was stabbed at an Indian council.

4. Who determined to drive the English from the valley of the Ohio? What was effected by Pontiac's confederacy? What made the war soon end? What became of Pontiac? When was peace concluded with the Indians?

REVIEW QUESTIONS ON PART I.

	PAGE.
1. Who discovered America?.....	1
2. Give an account of the early life of Columbus.....	2
3. Who furnished him with vessels?.....	3
4. Give an account of his first voyage.....	3-4 5
5. Give an account of his other voyages.....	5 6
6. How was he treated?.....	6
7. Relate what is said of the voyages of John and Sebastian Cabot.....	6 7
8. Give an account of the discoveries of Jacques Cartier.....	7 8
9. Relate what is said of Ponce de Leon.....	9
10. Who discovered the Pacific Ocean?.....	9
11. What country did Cortez conquer?.....	10
12. Give an account of the march of De Soto and his party.....	10 11
13. Relate the history of the massacre of the French in Florida.....	11 12
14. Give an account of the attempts of Sir Walter Raleigh to found a colony.....	12-13 14
15. Relate the history of the founding of Jamestown.....	14
16. Give an account of Captain John Smith's early life.....	15
17. Relate the history of the capture of Smith, and his salvation by Pocahontas.....	16-17 18
18. Give an account of Smith's voyages of discovery.....	19
19. State what you can about the colony of Virginia up to the de- parture of Smith.....	19-20 21
20. Give an account of the abandonment of Jamestown and the re- stitution of the colony.....	22 23
21. State what is said of the marriage of Pocahontas and its effect on the colony.....	23 24
22. When did the first House of Burgesses assemble?.....	24
23. Give the history of the colony till the appointment of Berke- ley.....	24 25
24. State what is said about slavery and the slave trade.....	25
25. Give an account of the conduct of the colony during the civil war in England.....	26-27 28
26. Give an account of Bacon's Rebellion.....	28-29 30
27. What was the effect of the English Revolution of 1688 on the colony?.....	30
28. Give an account of the Church Establishment in the colony.....	31
29. Give an account of the settlement at Plymouth Rock.....	32
30. Give an account of the settlement of Rhode Island.....	35
31. Of Maine. Of New Hampshire. Of Connecticut.....	35 36
32. Give an account of the Pequod War.....	36 37
33. Give an account of the settlement of Maryland.....	38
34. Give the history of Clayborne's rebellion.....	39
35. What was the "Toleration Act"?.....	39
36. State the condition of Maryland from 1660 to 1700.....	40 41
37. Give an account of the first settlement of New York.....	41 42

	PAGE.
38. Give the history of the conquest of New Netherlands.....	42 43
39. Give an account of the settlement of New Jersey.....	43
40. State the condition of New York in 1678.....	44
41. What treaty was made by New York? For what purpose?.....	44
42. Give an account of Lelsler's rebellion.....	41 45
43. Give an account of the massacre of Schenectady.....	45
44. Of Captain Kidd.....	45
45. Relate the early history of William Penn.....	46
46. Give an account of the settlement of Pennsylvania.....	46 47
47. Of the settlement of Delaware.....	47 48
48. State the history of "Mason and Dixon's Line.".....	48
49. Give an account of the settlement of North Carolina.....	48 49
50. State the condition of the early settlers.....	50
51. Relate the history of the war with the Tuscaroras.....	50 51
52. Give the history of North Carolina from 1729 to 1775.....	51
53. Give an account of the settlement of South Carolina.....	51 52
54. How did the Spaniards attempt to injure the colony?.....	52
55. What induced the Hollanders and French to emigrate to South Carolina?.....	52 53
56. Give the history of the Yemassee war.....	53
57. What was introduced in 1698? In 1702?.....	53
58. Give an account of the settlement of Georgia.....	51 55
59. Of the wars with the Spaniards.....	55 59
60. Of the civil government.....	56 57
61. Why was a league made between the New England colonies?.....	57
62. Give an account of the regicides.....	57 58
63. Of King Philip's War.....	58 59
64. Give an account of the Salem witchcraft.....	59 60
65. Describe the capture of Louisburg.....	60
66. Give an account of Marquette's explorations.....	61
67. Of La Salle's.....	62
68. Give an account of the first settlement of Louisiana.....	62 63
69. Of the Chickasaw War.....	63 61
70. Where had the French erected forts?.....	61
71. What message was sent to the French commander, and by whom?.....	65
72. Give an account of Washington's journey and first fight.....	65 66
73. Relate the history of Braddock's campaign.....	67
74. State the events of 1757.....	68 69
75. State the events of 1758.....	69 70
76. Give the history of the capture of Quebec.....	71 72
77. What were ceded to Great Britain by France?.....	72
78. Give an account of the Cherokee War.....	72-73 74
79. Give the history of Pontiac's War.....	74

PART II.

FROM THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE UNITED STATES.

CHAPTER I.

CAUSE AND COMMENCEMENT OF THE REVOLUTION.

SECTION I.

CAUSE OF THE REVOLUTION.

1. Now that the French war had been finished, the people living in the American colonies began to grow restless under the government of Great Britain. They found that they could raise armies among themselves, and the victories they had gained proved that their soldiers were brave. They knew also that their land was rich, and immense in extent; that they had good harbors through which they could carry on their commerce; and that they had plenty of good timber to build their ships with. Hence, the colonists did not wish to remain under the government of Great Britain any longer. They wanted to be FREE. This was the cause of the AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

GREAT BRITAIN TAXES THE COLONIES.

2. Moreover, Great Britain was very unjust in her treatment of the colonies. She owed a great deal of money,—many millions of dollars, and she wanted to

1. What did the colonists learn by the French War? What is said about their land? Their harbors? Ships? What was the chief cause of the American Revolution?

2. How was Great Britain unjust to the colonists? Did she allow them to send representatives to Parliament?

make the people in the colonies help to pay this debt. But she would not let the colonists elect men to go to England and help to make the laws by which the people were to be governed. The colonists thought it was unjust to tax them without allowing them to be represented in the Parliament which made the laws to govern the country.

THE STAMP ACT IS PASSED (1765).

3. In order to make the Americans pay money to the Government, the PARLIAMENT, (the name of the body of men who meet at London and make laws to govern Great Britain) passed a law, in 1765, called the STAMP ACT. By this law the Americans were obliged to put a stamp on all their law papers, leases, bills of sale, &c., in order to make them of any legal value. This stamp was a small piece of paper, like our postage stamps, and had a crown printed on it. No one was allowed to sell these stamps except the officers appointed by the British Government, and in this way Parliament expected to make the colonists pay them money.

VIRGINIA OPPOSES THE STAMP ACT.

4. The House of Burgesses of Virginia was the first to oppose the Stamp Act. PATRICK HENRY, one of the most celebrated orators and patriots that ever lived, offered a resolution, that no one had a right to tax the people of Virginia except the General Assembly of the

3. What is the Parliament? What Act did Parliament pass? When? How did this Act tax the Americans? What was this stamp?

4. Which colony first opposed this Stamp Act? Who was Patrick Henry? What resolution did he offer? Did the House of Burgesses pass it? Tell what Patrick Henry said.

Province. The House of Burgesses passed this resolution. In his speech on this occasion, Patrick Henry said: "Cæsar had his Brutus; Charles the First his Cromwell; and George the Third—" Here some cried out "Treason! Treason!" but he finished by saying—"may profit by their example; if *that* be treason, make the most of it."

STAMP ACT CONGRESS (1765).

5. Nearly all the people in the colonies were opposed to this Stamp Act. Hence, representatives of nearly all the colonies met in New York in October, 1765, in order to contrive some plan to get this law repealed. This Congress declared that Parliament had no right to tax the Americans without their consent. They also sent a petition to the King of Great Britain, and a memorial to Parliament, asking that this law be repealed.

THE STAMP ACT IS REPEALED (1766).

6. The officers appointed by the King to carry out the Stamp Act in the colonies were treated very roughly by the people, and became so unpopular that at last nearly all of them resigned their appointments. The people, moreover, determined that they would not buy goods made in England. Finally, the Parliament were obliged to repeal the law. This was done in 1766.

TEA IS TAXED BY PARLIAMENT (1773).

7. The English Government did not, however, give

5. Were the people of the colonies opposed to the Stamp Act? Where did their representatives meet? When? What name was given to this Congress? What did this Congress do?

6. How were the officers appointed by the King treated? What did the colonists determine to do? What did Parliament do? When was the Act repealed?

7. How did Parliament next try to tax the colonists? What was done with the tea brought to New York and Philadelphia? What became of the tea brought to Boston?

up the right which they claimed to tax the people in the colonies. Parliament passed a law, taxing all the *tea* which was sold in the colonies. Many vessels were laden with tea and sent to different cities in America to be sold. But the commanders of the vessels which came to New York and Philadelphia were so frightened by the people that they did not land the tea, but carried it back to England. The officers who brought the tea to Boston, determined to land it. But they did not succeed. One bright moonlight night, a good many men, disguised like Indians, went on board the vessels, broke open the boxes, and poured the tea into the water.

BRITISH TROOPS ARE SENT TO BOSTON (1768).

8. The British Government determined to punish the people of Boston for this. Accordingly, they sent British soldiers under General GAGE to Boston, and quartered them in the houses of the people. These soldiers had many quarrels with the people, and once they fired into a crowd of the citizens and killed three men.

SECTION II.

THE FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS MEETS (1774).

1. In September, 1774, the people of all the colonies except Georgia sent their best men to meet in Philadelphia, in order to determine what was best for the colonies

8. How did the British Government punish the people of Boston? When did the soldiers arrive? Who commanded them? What affray occurred?

1. Where did representatives from the colonies meet? When? What was this Congress called? Who was chosen President? What had Patrick Henry said? What resolutions did this Congress pass?

to do. PEYTON RANDOLPH of Virginia was chosen President of this CONGRESS, and many great and wise men were among its members. Patrick Henry, the celebrated Virginia orator, was there. He was the author of those noble words, "GIVE ME LIBERTY, OR GIVE ME DEATH" This Congress passed many resolutions. In some they approved of the conduct of the people of Massachusetts, and said they would aid those who suffered; in others they determined not to import any British goods, and not to export anything to Great Britain.

GENERAL GAGE FORTIFIES BOSTON.

2. The British Government, however, would not agree to repeal their unjust laws, but determined to persist in oppressing the colonists. Hence, the people saw that they would have to fight to get their rights. In order to be prepared for this, they began to collect guns and ammunition at various places in the colonies. General Gage was afraid that the people would attack him at Boston, and so he began to build fortifications in order to protect his soldiers.

BATTLE OF LEXINGTON (APRIL 19, 1775).

3. General Gage heard that there was a large amount of ammunition at Concord, belonging to the Americans. This town is about twenty miles from Boston. He determined to destroy this ammunition. Accordingly, in the middle of the night, he despatched about eight

2. What was the conduct of the British Government? How did the colonists prepare for war? What did Gen. Gage do at Boston?

3. Where did Gage send an expedition? For what purpose? Give an account of the battle of Lexington. When did it take place? Why is it a memorable battle?

hundred soldiers from Boston to march to Concord for this purpose. When these soldiers arrived at LEXINGTON, the middle of the next day (April 19th, 1775), they found about one hundred armed Americans assembled in the village in front of the church. Major Pitcairn, a British officer, rode up to them and called out, "Disperse, you rebels! Throw down your arms, and disperse!" The men did not disperse. So Major Pitcairn fired his pistol at them, and ordered his soldiers to fire. They gave a cheer and fired. The Americans then ran away, firing a few shots. Seven Americans were killed, and nine wounded. Only one or two of the British were wounded. This was the first fight of the WAR OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

THE BRITISH RETREAT TO BOSTON.

4. The British soldiers then went on to Concord, and destroyed the powder there. On their way back to Boston, they were fired upon at every point by the Americans, who had seized their arms and rushed to the spot. A great many of the British were killed and wounded, and they would all have been destroyed if General Gage had not sent out some more soldiers to meet and help them.

FORTS ARE SEIZED (1775).

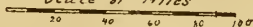
5. After this fight, the Americans seized many forts held by British soldiers. Among these was Fort TICONDEROGA, on Lake Champlain. This was taken by ETHAN

4. How did the British force suffer on its retreat? What saved it from being destroyed?

5. What did the colonists seize? What fort on Lake Champlain? Where is Ticonderoga? (See map.) How far from New York City? Who commanded the American party in this attack? Relate the affair.

MAP OF
NEW YORK, PENN.,
NEW JERSEY, DEL.,
AND MARYLAND.

Scale of Miles





ALLEN, commanding a small party of Americans. As Allen was approaching the fort, a sentinel snapped his gun at him. It missed fire, and Allen, with his party, rushed into the fort and demanded a surrender. The British commander asked, "By what authority?" "In the name of the great JEHOVAH and the CONTINENTAL CONGRESS," replied Allen. The commander surrendered. Here, the Americans got a great deal of powder, and many guns.

BOSTON IS BESIEGED (1775).

6. The people, on all sides, seized their arms and rushed to Boston. Soon, there was an army of thirty thousand men around that city. Their leaders determined to try and make the British evacuate Boston. So Colonel Prescott was sent, one night, with one thousand men to fortify BUNKER'S HILL, near the entrance of the peninsula upon which Charlestown is situated. They intended to plant cannon here and fire upon the British in Boston. By mistake, in the night, the Americans fortified Breed's Hill, which was still nearer to the British.

BATTLE OF BUNKER'S HILL (JUNE 17, 1775).

7. General Gage determined to drive the Americans away from this place. Accordingly, about 12 o'clock, on the 17th of June (1775), he sent across in boats about three thousand soldiers, commanded by General Howe, with orders to drive the Americans away. The British

6. How many Americans gathered around Boston? What did their leaders determine to do? What hill did the Americans fortify? Why? How was the mistake made?

7. When was the battle of Bunker's Hill fought? Give the particulars of the battle. How many men did the British lose? Americans? Why did the British claim the victory?

landed at the foot of the hill, formed a line of battle, fixed their bayonets, and marched up against the redoubt held by the Americans. The British wore scarlet uniforms, and it was a splendid sight to see them coming on with their bayonets glittering in the sunlight. PUTNAM, one of the American leaders, told his men not to fire "till they could see the *whites of the eyes* of the British." They waited till the British got close to them, and then a perfect sheet of flame poured forth from the redoubt. A great many of the British were killed and wounded. The rest retreated rapidly down the hill. Their officers rallied them, and brought them up again. Again the fire of the Americans was too hot for them, and they retreated again down to their boats. Here some soldiers, sent over by General Gage, joined them, and they advanced once more against the Americans. The latter had now used up nearly all their powder, and so, when the British attacked them, they were obliged to retreat to the rest of their army. So ended the BATTLE OF BUNKER'S HILL. The British had a great many more killed; but as the Americans retreated, the former claimed the victory. The British lost 1054 men; the Americans, only 453.

CHAPTER II.

REVOLUTION (CONTINUED).

SECTION I.

WASHINGTON CHOSEN COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF (1775).

1. The Continental Congress met again at Philadelphia, on the 10th of May (1775). As soon as news of

1. Where did the Continental Congress again meet? When? How many troops did they determine to raise and equip? Who was appointed Commander-in-chief?

these battles was received, they determined to resist the British, and hence voted to raise and equip twenty thousand troops. They also elected GEORGE WASHINGTON of Virginia, commander-in-chief of all the forces. He had fought so well under Braddock, that all thought he was the best man to command the American soldiers.

THE BRITISH GOVERNORS ARE DRIVEN AWAY (1775).

2. Before the end of the year 1775, all the Royal Governors of the colonies were driven away, except the Governor of Connecticut, Mr. Trumbull, who joined the side of the Americans. After this, the colonies governed themselves.

THE AMERICANS INVADE CANADA (1775).

3. Canada belonged to the British, as well as the thirteen colonies with which they were now carrying on a war. The Americans determined to send some soldiers into Canada, and try to conquer it from the British and get the Canadians to join their side.

ARNOLD'S MARCH THROUGH THE WILDERNESS.

4. Accordingly, General Washington sent Colonel ARNOLD with eleven hundred men, to march through Maine into Canada. Colonel Arnold went up the Kennebec river, and then marched through Canada to Quebec. He marched more than three hundred miles through a country where no people were living. During

2. What became of the Royal Governors of the colonies? What is said of the Governor of Connecticut?

3. To whom did Canada belong? What did the Americans determine to do?

4. Who commanded the expedition against Canada? What route did he take? Describe his march.

his march, all his provisions gave out, and his soldiers had to eat their dogs, shoes, and cartridge-boxes.

ATTACK ON QUEBEC (1775).

5. Finally, Arnold reached QUEBEC. This town is on the St. Lawrence river, about four hundred and fifty miles nearly north of New York city. Here Arnold met another American army, under General MONTGOMERY, which had marched from New York. These forces attacked Quebec in the midst of a terrible snow-storm; but though they fought very bravely, yet the British drove them back, and killed General Montgomery. This happened on the 31st of December, 1775. The Americans, shortly afterwards, retreated out of Canada into New York.

THE BRITISH LEAVE BOSTON (1776).

6. In the meantime, General Washington had been arming and drilling the soldiers he had around Boston. As soon as the spring of 1776 opened, he determined to make the British leave Boston. So one dark night, he sent some soldiers to Dorchester Heights, and made them construct there a redoubt, or sort of fort. He intended to place cannon in this redoubt, and fire upon the British in Boston. When General HOWE who commanded the British, saw this, he put all his soldiers on board his vessels, and sailed away to Halifax, a town in Nova Scotia. Washington then marched into Boston, and there was great rejoicing among the people at getting rid of the British.

5. What city did Arnold reach? Where is it situated? What other army did Arnold meet? Describe the attack on Quebec. When made? What was done by the American army shortly afterwards?

6. What had Washington been doing? What heights did he occupy? When? For what purpose? Who commanded the British in Boston? What did he now do?



VICINITY OF THE CITY OF MEXICO



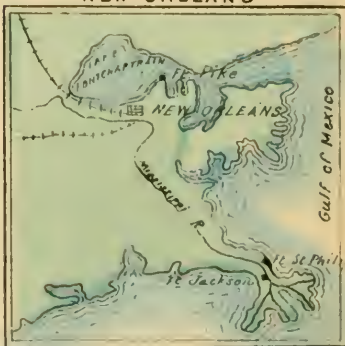
VICKSBURG AND THE ADJACENT COUNTRY



CHARLESTON



NEW ORLEANS



ATTACK ON FORT MOULTRIE (JUNE 28, 1776.)

7. The British next attempted to capture CHARLESTON, a city in South Carolina. But the Americans had expected this, and had built a fort made of palmetto logs, on Sullivan's Island. Colonel MOULTRIE, a brave officer, was put in command of the soldiers in this fort, which was named after him. The British vessels could not get to Charleston, except by passing near this fort, and under fire of its cannon. On the 28th of June (1776), Admiral SIR PETER PARKER appeared before this fort with ten war vessels, which were armed with two hundred and seventy cannon. The British officers laughed when they saw this little log fort, and thought it would be an easy job for them to batter it down. So they sailed up close, and fired a hundred cannon at it at the same time. They thought this had knocked the fort down. But when the smoke cleared away, they saw the American flag still floating over the fort; and the Americans fired back at the ships. They kept on firing at each other all day. The British cannon balls went into the soft wood and made the fort stronger. At one time, a cannon ball broke the flag-staff, and down fell the flag outside the fort. The British raised a cheer, for they thought the fort had surrendered. But a brave American, Sergeant JASPER jumped over the wall, walked the whole length of the fort while the British were firing at him, picked up the flag, and raised it again on the walls of the fort. Finally, the

7. What city did the British try to capture in June, 1776? Between what rivers is Charleston situated? (See map.) Where is Fort Moultrie? Who commanded the Americans in this fort? How was the fort built? How many vessels were in the British fleet? How many cannon had they? Describe the attack. Relate Sergeant Jasper's gallant feat. How was he rewarded? What was the result of the battle?

British gave up the attack and sailed away. One of their largest ships, however, they had to burn; for it had got aground during the fight. Sergeant Jasper had a sword presented to him for his gallant conduct.

SECTION II.

DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE (JULY 4, 1776).

1. The British Government seemed determined not to grant their rights to the colonists. They paid no attention to their petitions, but hired a great many soldiers in Germany to help them to conquer the Americans. Some of these soldiers came from Hesse-Cassel, and hence the Americans called them **HESSIANS**. The American Congress, seeing how they were treated by the British Government, determined to separate from it. Hence, on the 4th of July, 1776, they passed the **DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE**. By this, they declared the colonies *free*, and that they had the right to govern themselves. The people in western North Carolina had already, in May, 1775, declared themselves free and independent. Virginia, also, did the same in June, 1776.

THE BRITISH CAPTURE NEW YORK (1776).

2. The next point which the British aimed to capture, after their defeat at Charleston, was **NEW YORK**

1. How did the British Government behave? Where did they hire soldiers? What were they called? What did Congress determine to do? What did they pass? When? By whom had this declaration been previously made?

2. What city did the British next aim to capture? How is New York situated? (See map facing p. 82.) Where is Flatbush? How far from New York? Where did Howe land? With how many troops? Where did a battle take place? Result? What regiment fought bravely? What was the consequence of this defeat?

CITY. In this they were successful. In August, General Howe landed on Long Island with 30,000 soldiers. A small army of the Americans was stationed at FLATBUSH. This General Howe attacked and defeated. The Americans fought bravely, but their numbers were too few. A regiment of Marylanders fought until nearly all of them were killed. Even those who escaped were wounded. General Howe then crossed over to New York, and took possession of the city.

RETREAT THROUGH NEW JERSEY (1776).

3. General Howe soon after sent Lord CORNWALLIS with 6,000 troops, after General Washington, who was in New Jersey. The American army was too small to risk a battle. So General Washington retreated before the British through New Jersey, and finally crossed the Delaware river into Pennsylvania, at Trenton Ferry. Many of the people of New Jersey joined the British. These were called **TORIES**. Those who remained true to the Americans were called **WHIGS**. Congress was in session at Philadelphia, but, fearing that the British would capture that city, they adjourned to Baltimore. Feeling that affairs were in a desperate state, they vested Washington with almost absolute power, so much confidence had they in him.

BATTLE OF TRENTON (DEC. 26, 1776).

4. General Washington saw that he must win a victory in order to raise the spirits of the soldiers and

3. Who pursued Gen. Washington? Where did Washington retreat? Why did he not fight a battle? Where is Trenton? How far from New York? Where is Philadelphia? Princeton? To what place did Congress adjourn? What powers did they grant to Washington?

4. What British force did Washington determine to attack? Describe the march there, and the battle. When fought? Result? Where did Washington take the prisoners?

people. Colonel Rawle was at TRENTON with about 1,500 British. These Washington determined to capture. Accordingly, on Christmas night, he crossed the Delaware river with his army. The river was filled with floating ice, but the men got across safely. The Americans then marched quickly to Trenton, and attacked the British. After a short fight, the British surrendered. The Americans got also their baggage and artillery. Washington then crossed back into Pennsylvania with his prisoners.

BATTLE OF PRINCETON (JAN. 3, 1777).

5. After putting his prisoners in a safe place, Washington came back to Trenton. The victory had raised the spirits of his soldiers, and he determined to fight another battle. He had now about 5,000 men. Cornwallis collected a larger army at PRINCETON, and then marched toward Trenton with the intention of destroying Washington's army. Washington fell back to Assumpinck Creek, and there formed a line of battle. Cornwallis came up, but night had set in, and so he determined to put off his attack till next morning. All night long the watch-fires burned brightly along the line of the Americans; but the next morning, when Cornwallis looked across the creek, he found that the American army had gone. Washington had marched away in the night, had gone around the British army, and had moved toward Princeton, in order to attack the soldiers that Cornwallis had left there. About half

5. How many men had Washington now? What place did he occupy? Who advanced to attack him? How did Washington deceive Cornwallis? Describe the battle of Princeton. When fought? Result? Where did Washington go into winter-quarters? Where is Morristown?

way on the road he met three regiments of British soldiers on their way to join Cornwallis. These attacked the Americans, and the latter began to retreat. General Washington then seized a flag and rushed towards the British, ordering his soldiers to follow him. They *did* follow him, and *beat* the British. Washington then went on to Princeton, and captured nearly a whole regiment of the British. After this, General Washington put his army in winter-quarters at Morristown, New Jersey.

ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION.

6. In 1777, Congress passed the "ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION." According to these, each State retained its own government independent of the others, but they promised to help each other against the British until they should become free.

BATTLE OF BRANDYWINE (SEPT. 11, 1777).

7. On the 5th of July (1777), General Howe left part of his army in New York, and sailed with the remainder towards the South. He sailed up Chesapeake Bay, and landed his army at the head of Elk river. His plan was to march toward Philadelphia, and try to capture it. When he arrived at BRANDYWINE CREEK he found General Washington's army on the opposite side. General Howe's army was larger than Washington's. So he sent part of his army to attack

6. When did Congress pass the "Articles of Confederation"? What were the main provisions of these Articles?

7. Where did Howe land an army in the summer of 1777? What was his plan? Where is Brandywine Creek? Where is Germantown? Valley Forge? When was the battle of Brandywine fought? Result? What distinguished foreigners fought on the American side?

the Americans on the flank, while he attacked them in the front. The British were victorious, and drove the Americans from the field. In this battle, MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE and COUNT PULASKI fought on the side of the Americans. The former was a nobleman of France, and the latter of Poland. They had left their homes, and had come to help the Americans to fight for freedom.

BATTLE OF GERMANTOWN (OCT. 4, 1777).

8. After this battle, General Howe marched on, and took possession of Philadelphia. He left, however, part of his army at GERMANTOWN about six miles from Philadelphia. General Washington determined to surprise this detachment. So at daybreak, on the 4th of October, he attacked it. At first, the Americans had the best of the fight. But a regiment of British went into a stone house, and kept up such a heavy fire upon the Americans that they had to stop the pursuit. The British then rallied, charged the Americans, and drove them from the field. Washington then put his army in winter quarters at VALLEY FORGE. The American soldiers suffered very much during this winter; for many of them had no shoes or stockings, tents or blankets. They bore all this cheerfully, however, for they hoped to gain their freedom.

8. What city did the British occupy? Where did Howe leave part of his army? When did Washington attack this? Describe the battle. Where did Washington go into winter-quarters? What is said of the condition of the American army?

CHAPTER III.

REVOLUTION (CONTINUED).

SECTION I.

BURGOYNE'S INVASION (1777).

1. While these things were taking place in Pennsylvania, the Americans were fighting the British in New York also. The British Government determined to try and cut off the New England States from the others. Their plan was to send an army, under General BURGOYNE from Canada by way of Lake Champlain. Another army was to go up the Hudson from New York, and the two armies were to meet somewhere near Albany. General Burgoyne set out at the head of a splendid army of seven thousand soldiers. He had also a great many Indians with him. At first, he was very successful, and captured all the forts on his way.

BATTLE OF BENNINGTON (AUG. 16, 1777).

2. When he arrived at Fort Edward, he halted there some time, waiting for stores for his army. In order to get some provisions, he sent Colonel BAUM with five hundred Hessians, into Vermont. Near BENNINGTON, Baum was met by General STARKE. When Starke saw the British, he cried out, "Come on, boys! we must beat these red-coats, or Molly Starke's a widow." They did beat them, but just then another regiment of British

1. What did the British Government determine to do in 1777? What was the plan? Where is Lake Champlain? (See map facing p. 82.) Where is Albany? How far from New York City? Who commanded the expedition from Canada? How many soldiers had he? How did he succeed at first?

2. Where did Burgoyne halt? For what purpose? Where did he send Col. Baum? Where did Gen. Starke meet him? What did Starke say? Describe the battle. What was the result?

came up. This had been sent by Burgoyne to help Baum, but they came too late, and the Americans beat them too. The British lost seven hundred men in killed, wounded, and prisoners.

MURDER OF MISS MCCREA (1777).

3. About this time, a cruel murder was committed by the Indians. Lieutenant Jones, an officer of the British army, under Burgoyne, had become engaged to a Miss McCREA a charming and beautiful young lady, living near Fort Edward. He wished her to come to the British camp in order to be married to her. Accordingly, he sent two Indians to bring her to the camp, promising them some money for it. While the Indians were conducting her to the camp, they got into a quarrel as to which should get the officer's money. Finally, one of them got so angry that he killed the young lady with his tomahawk, so that the other should not get the reward. Instead of receiving his bride, the unhappy lover received her scalp. He was so much horrified at this result that he offered to resign his commission in the army. Burgoyne refused to let him resign, and the officer then deserted, and led a wandering, heartbroken life during the remainder of his days. This cruel murder made many an American join the army and fight the British.

BATTLES OF STILLWATER (1777).

4. General GATES had been appointed to command the army in front of Burgoyne. He placed his army

3. Relate the murder of Miss McCrea. What became of her lover?

4. Who commanded the American army in front of Burgoyne? Where did he post his army? Where is Stillwater? When was the first battle fought? Result? When was the second battle fought? Result? Give an account of the conduct of Arnold.

behind strong fortifications at STILLWATER, on the Hudson, about fifteen miles above Albany. Burgoyne had to beat him in order to get to Albany. He tried to do it, but he failed. He fought the Americans all day on the 19th of September, but when night came, the Americans held the same position they had in the morning. Burgoyne tried another battle on the 7th of October, but the red-coats were badly beaten, and lost nine cannon. Arnold fought very bravely in this battle. General Gates did not like him, and ordered him to stay in his tent. But Arnold got on his horse, galloped to the place where they were fighting, and led the men in many a charge. Gates sent an officer to arrest Arnold, but he could not overtake him until Arnold got his leg broken by a British bullet. Arnold was a brave soldier, and would have been honored by the Americans had he not tried afterwards to betray his country.

BURGOYNE SURRENDERS (OCT. 17, 1777).

5. After this battle, General Burgoyne retreated to Saratoga; but he could not retreat any farther, for General Gates had placed soldiers in the mountain passes in his rear. So General Burgoyne surrendered his army on the 17th of October. It was a joyful sight to the American soldiers to see more than five thousand red-coats march out and lay down their arms before them. The Americans got from them thirty-five brass cannon, and more than five thousand muskets.

5. To what point did Burgoyne retreat? Where is Saratoga? Why could not Burgoyne retreat farther? When did Burgoyne surrender? How many British soldiers laid down their arms? How many cannon and muskets were captured?

SECTION II.

RECOGNITION OF INDEPENDENCE BY FRANCE (1778).

1. The Americans were a great deal encouraged by this victory, and another event also happened which made them feel sure of gaining their freedom. The King of France recognized the independence of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA (as they were called), and promised to send them ships and soldiers to help them to fight the British. The American Commissioners who negotiated this treaty were Silas Deane, Benjamin Franklin, and Arthur Lee.

THE BRITISH ATTEMPT TO MAKE PEACE (1778).

2. The British Government began to fear that the Americans would gain their independence, now that they were assisted by France. So they offered to withdraw all their troops from America, and to let the Colonists send representatives to Parliament, if they would make peace, and allow them to lay taxes on the people. But the Americans refused the terms. They wanted to be an *independent* government. The British even attempted to bribe some of the chief men among the Americans. They offered ten thousand guineas to Governor REED, as member of Congress from Pennsylvania, if he would try to get the Americans to accept their terms. Governor Reed replied: "I am not worth purchasing; but such as I am, the King of Great Britain is not rich enough to buy me."

1. What important event happened in the beginning of 1778? How did the King of France promise to help the Americans?

2. What did the British Government now fear? What terms were offered to the Americans? Did the Americans accept them? Why not? Relate the attempt to bribe Gov. Reed, and his reply.

THE BRITISH LEAVE PHILADELPHIA (1778).

3. SIR HENRY CLINTON had been put in command of the British army, in place of General Howe. Clinton became afraid that a French fleet would blockade the mouth of the Delaware, so that the British ships could not get to him. So he determined to leave Philadelphia, and march with his army to New York.

BATTLE OF MONMOUTH (JUNE 28, 1778).

4. General Washington followed after the British army and overtook them at MONMOUTH, in New Jersey. The two armies fought hard, and the Americans were getting the better of the battle, but night came on, and they had to stop fighting. A story is told about a brave woman who fought in this battle. Her name was MARY PITCHER, and her husband was a cannoneer in the American army. While the battle was going on, Mary was busy bringing water to her husband from the spring. During the battle a ball struck her husband and killed him. They were about to move his cannon off the field, but this brave woman told them *she* would take her husband's place. She *did* take it, and fired the cannon as long as the battle continued. General Washington heard of her brave conduct, and made her a sergeant in the army. Ever afterward, she went by the name of "Captain Molly." After the battle, General Washington wrapped his cloak around him and lay down to sleep, with the root of a tree for

3. Who was now in command of the British army? Why did he determine to leave Philadelphia? Towards what place did he march?

4. Where did Washington overtake the British? Where is Monmouth? (See map facing p 82.) Why did not the Americans defeat the British? Relate the story about Mary Pitcher. How did Washington reward her? How did the British avoid a battle on the next day?

a pillow. He intended to attack the British at day-break. The British were afraid of this, and hence noiselessly marched away during the night.

CAPTURE OF SAVANNAH (1778).

5. In November, the British captured SAVANNAH, in Georgia. They intended to try and conquer the Southern States, and we will soon see what they did there the next year (1779). In the North, they did not try to attack Washington's army, but sent soldiers on board their ships, and landed them on the coast, where they might rob and plunder the people. In one of these expeditions they came near capturing General Putnam. They had him surrounded on all sides except one where there was a flight of one hundred stone steps. General Putnam rode his horse down these steps, and thus escaped, for the British cavalry were afraid to follow.

MASSACHUSETTS TRIES AN EXPEDITION (1778).

6. The authorities of the State of Massachusetts thought they would try an independent expedition. So they sent General Lovell with some of their soldiers to try and capture a British post at Penobscot. The British had very few men there, and very poor fortifications. But General Lovell was afraid to attack them. So he planted his cannon half-a-mile off, and shot at them for two weeks. He did not hurt the British much. Finally, the British attacked General Lovell, and so scattered his forces that they could hardly find their

5. What city did the British capture in November, 1778? Where is Savannah? (See map.) What was the intention of the British? What did the British do in the North? Relate the escape of Putnam.

6. What State tried an expedition in 1778? What place was it to attack? What did Gen. Lovell do? What became of him and his soldiers?

KENTUCKY

VIRGINIA

NASHVILLE.

TENNESSEE

NORTH

SOUTH CAROLINA

ALABAMA

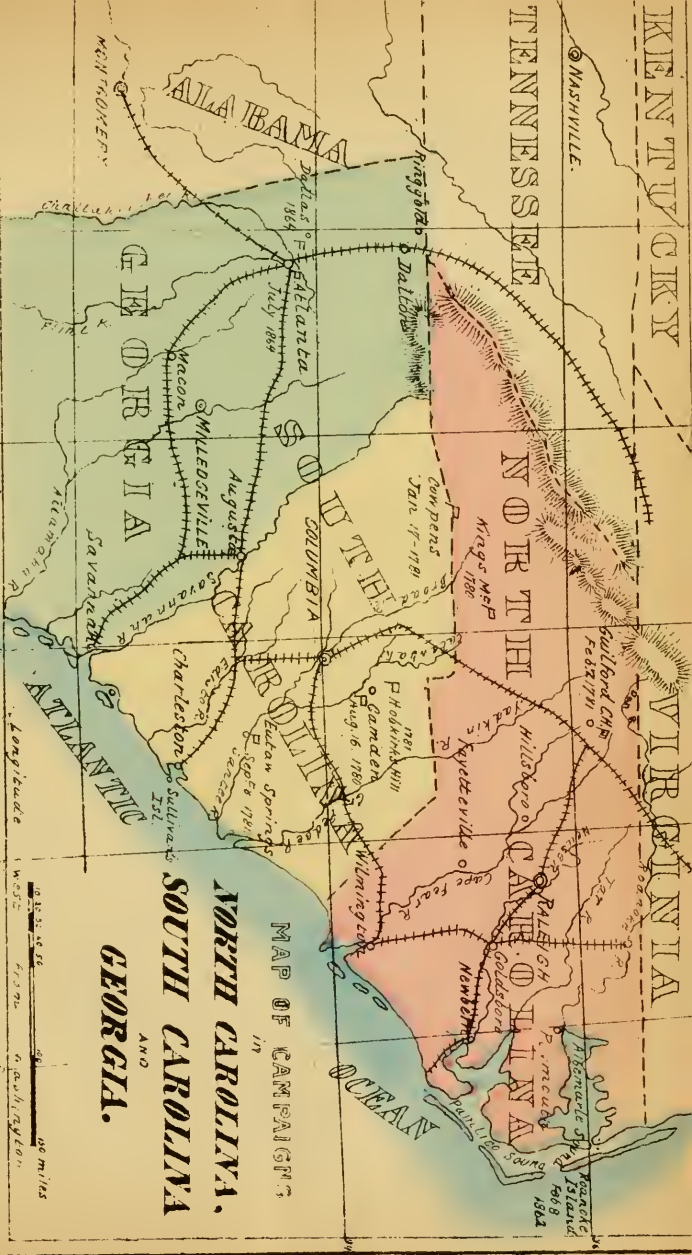
GEORGIA

MAP OF CAMPAIGNS

NORTH CAROLINA,

SOUTH CAROLINA

AND
GEORGIA.



way back to Boston. They let the British alone after that.

SIEGE OF SAVANNAH (1779).

7. During the year 1779, the British and Americans had a good many fights in Georgia and South Carolina. Sometimes the British were successful, and sometimes the Americans. Finally, the Americans tried to capture Savannah. A French fleet brought three thousand five hundred French soldiers there to help them. General LINCOLN commanded the American army, and Count D'ESTAING the French. On the 9th of October, they tried to capture the city by storm, but the British drove them back. Sergeant Jasper, the hero of Fort Moultrie, was with the Americans. He rushed forward among the foremost, and planted the American flag on the ramparts; but he was wounded, and, shortly afterward, died.

SURRENDER OF CHARLESTON (MAY 12, 1780).

8. In the spring of 1780, the British, under Sir Henry Clinton, laid siege to CHARLESTON, and, after a long struggle, it was surrendered to them. By this surrender, about 5,000 soldiers and 400 cannon fell into the hands of the British.

MARION AND SUMPTER.

9. LORD CORNWALLIS was then put in command of the British in South Carolina. He soon had soldiers in

7. Where were there many fights in 1779? Who were successful? What city did the Americans and French try to take? Who commanded the Americans? The French? Describe the assault. What was the result? What is said of Sergeant Jasper?

8. What city did Clinton besiege in 1780? Where is Charleston? (See map facing p. 87.) What was the result of the siege? What did the British capture?

9. Who was put in command of the British in South Carolina? What did he do? What American leaders remained in South Carolina? How did they carry on the war? What was done by Sumpter? How were the Americans armed? Relate the anecdote of Marion.

forts all over the State, and drove all the American soldiers into North Carolina, except those led by MARION and SUMPTER. Marion was called the "Swamp Fox," and Sumpter the "Carolina Game Cock." They and their men lived in thickets and swamps, and rushed out on the British whenever they could get a chance. Once Sumpter killed an entire British regiment except nine men. The Americans were very poorly armed. The swords of some of them were made out of *saws*. They had very little to eat. Once, when a British officer was with Marion, arranging about exchanging some prisoners, Marion invited him to stay to dinner. The officer accepted the invitation. When dinner-time came, some sweet potatoes were handed to them on a piece of bark. The British officer was astonished, but Marion told him that frequently he had *nothing* to eat. Still these brave patriots were willing to bear all this suffering, for they were fighting for *liberty*.

CHAPTER IV.

REVOLUTION (CONTINUED).

SECTION VI.

BATTLE OF CAMDEN (16TH AUGUST, 1780).

1. In order to oppose Cornwallis, Congress sent General Gates with an army to South Carolina. On the 16th of August, a battle was fought near CAMDEN.

1. Whom did Congress send to oppose Cornwallis? Where did he fight with Cornwallis? Where is Camden? (See map facing p. 98.) What was the result of the battle? Where did Gates collect a part of his army? Where did Cornwallis go?

The Americans were badly beaten. They were so scattered, that Gates did not collect together 150 men before he reached Charlotte, in North Carolina. Lord Cornwallis then marched into North Carolina, and overran the whole State.

BATTLE OF KING'S MOUNTAIN (7TH OCT., 1780).

2. A part of his army, however, under Colonel FERGUSON, was badly beaten in the western part of North Carolina. The brave mountaineers of North Carolina, Tennessee, and Virginia, pressed him so closely that he had to fight them at KING'S MOUNTAIN. The British were posted on a hill, and the Americans attacked them on all sides at once. Whenever the British charged and drove back the Americans on one side, the Americans on the other side came up and attacked them in the rear. Finally, Colonel Ferguson was killed, and his whole army was either killed or captured. This was an important victory, and helped the Americans very much in gaining their independence.

TREASON OF BENEDICT ARNOLD (1780).

3. In September, 1780, the Americans came very near losing WEST POINT. This place, on the Hudson, was strongly fortified, and was very important to the Americans, as it connected the Eastern States with the rest of the Union. BENEDICT ARNOLD was in command of it. This man, though he had fought

2. Where did Cornwallis send a part of his army? Under whom? Who attacked this force? Where? When? Where is King's Mountain? Describe the battle. What result? Was this victory important?

3. Where is West Point? (See map facing p. 82.) Why was it important to the Americans? Who commanded there in 1780? What did he determine to do? Whom did Clinton send to make terms with Arnold? What bargain was made between them?

bravely in many battles, now determined to betray his post to the British. Accordingly, he sent word to the British commander at New York, that he would deliver up the fort to him, if he was paid enough for it. Sir Henry Clinton at once sent his aide-de-camp, Major ANDRE, to West Point to see Arnold, and make terms with him. It was agreed at this meeting that Arnold should give up West Point, and that the British should give him \$50,000, and a place as Brigadier-General in their army.

ANDRE IS CAPTURED (23D SEPT., 1780.).

4. The vessel that brought Andre had sailed down the river. So Andre got a pass from Arnold, and set out to return to New York on horseback. Arnold's pass carried him safely through all the pickets except one. When he arrived at Tarrytown, about thirty miles from New York, he came to the last American picket. Here, three Americans, PAULDING, WILLIAMS and VAN WERT, stopped him, and demanded his pass. Andre was so near New York that he thought they were British soldiers, and hence told them that he was a British officer. The Americans told him that he must surrender himself as their prisoner. Andre offered them large sums of money if they would let him go, but they were true patriots, and refused. They took him to their commanding officer. Congress gave them each a silver medal, and \$200 a year.

4. How did Andre return towards New York? Where was he halted? By whom? What took place? How did Congress reward these men?

EXECUTION OF ANDRE (1780).

5. Andre was tried by fourteen general officers, appointed by General Washington. They convicted him of being a spy, and condemned him to death. The British commander made many threats against Washington if he should have Andre shot, but Washington did his duty, and carried out the sentence of the court-martial.

ARNOLD ESCAPES.

6. The Americans tried to capture Arnold, in order to punish him for his treason; but as soon as he heard that Andre was captured, he escaped to New York. The British gave him the money they had promised, and made him General. He fought on their side during the rest of the war; but he was an unhappy man all the rest of his life, for he felt that all men despised him. In London, after the war, he said, "I was born, and lived to the prime of my life in America; but *now* I can call no man in America my friend." On one occasion, during the war, Arnold took a Virginian prisoner, and asked him, what the Americans would do with him if they should capture him. The Virginian replied, "They would bury your leg that was wounded at Quebec with military honors, but would hang the rest of you." Benedict Arnold was born at Norwich, in the State of Connecticut. He was a traitor, and no one cares where he died.

5. Of what was Andre found guilty? What was his sentence? Did Washington carry out this sentence?

6. Did Arnold escape? What became of him afterwards? What did he say in London? Relate what the Virginian said to him. Where was Arnold born?

GEN. GREENE APPOINTED TO COMMAND IN THE SOUTH
(1780).

7. By the recommendation of Washington, Congress appointed General GREENE to command the armies in the Carolinas, in place of General Gates, who had been so badly beaten. General Greene had only two thousand soldiers. He kept half of them with him, and sent General MORGAN with the rest to the north-western part of South Carolina.

BATTLE OF COWPENS (17TH JAN., 1781).

8. Lord Cornwallis sent TARLETON, with one thousand and one hundred men, to beat Morgan. But he was himself beaten. The armies met at the "COWPENS." Colonel WASHINGTON, a brave cavalry officer in the American army, charged the British soldiers, and scattered them in every direction. Tarleton lost six hundred men, and all his baggage. During the battle, Colonel Washington met Tarleton, and they had a fierce fight. Tarleton, at last, was wounded, and put spurs to his horse and escaped. Afterwards, at a dinner company, Tarleton said to an American lady, that "he would like to see that famous Colonel Washington whom the Americans boasted about so much." "You might have seen him at the battle of Cowpens," replied the lady, "if you had only looked *behind* you."

7. Whom did Washington recommend to be put in command of the troops in the Carolinas? How many men had Greene? Where did he send Gen. Morgan with part of them?

8. Whom did Cornwallis send against Morgan? Where was a battle fought between them? Where is the "Cowpens"? (See map facing p. 98.) What was the result of the battle? What personal encounter took place? Relate the anecdote mentioned?

RETREAT THROUGH THE CAROLINAS (1781).

9. After Tarleton's defeat, Lord Cornwallis marched with all his army after Morgan. The latter retreated into North Carolina, and rejoined Greene. The Americans were not strong enough to fight the British army, and hence General Greene retreated toward Virginia. Cornwallis pursued, and they had a close race. Finally, Greene got his army safely across the Dan river, and Cornwallis gave up the chase.

BATTLE OF GUILFORD C. H. (15TH MARCH, 1781)

10. Afterwards, Gen. Greene returned to North Carolina, and fought Cornwallis at GUILFORD C. H. They had a hard fight, but finally, the Americans were driven from the field. Cornwallis then marched with part of his army into Virginia. He left the rest in fortifications in different parts of South Carolina. Gen. Greene attacked these, and, finally, drove the British from all their posts except Charleston. At EUTAW SPRINGS he had a severe battle with the British, and killed and wounded a great many of them.

CAPTURE OF FORT MOTTE BY MARION (1781).

11. One of the posts held by the British was called FORT MOTTE. This had been the residence of a Whig lady, but the British had taken it from her, and had posted soldiers in it. Marion attacked this place

9. What did Cornwallis do after this battle? Where did Morgan retreat? Where did he rejoin Greene? Why did not Greene give battle to Cornwallis? Where did he retreat? Where is the Dan river? Did Cornwallis pursue farther?

10. What did Greene afterwards do? What was the result of the battle? Where is Guilford C. H.? Where did Cornwallis then march? Where did he leave part of his army? What did Greene do? Where did he fight a battle? Where is Eutaw Springs? How far from Charleston?

11. Describe the capture of Fort Motte.

with his men, but he found that he could not capture the British unless he set fire to the house. Mrs. Motte agreed to let him do this, and even furnished the bow and arrows with which the lighted tow was shot upon the roof. The British surrendered as soon as they found that the roof was on fire. Marion and his men then put the fire out, and saved the house for the patriotic lady.

SECTION II.

LORD CORNWALLIS IN VIRGINIA (1781).

1. As we have stated before, Lord Cornwallis marched with the greater part of his army into Virginia. He was destined never to leave it except as a prisoner. Washington had placed La Fayette in command of the American soldiers in Virginia. La Fayette, however, had too small an army to attack Cornwallis. Moreover, many of La Fayette's soldiers deserted, and went home. They were from the Northern States. They were afraid of the victorious troops of Cornwallis, and, moreover, were not willing to fight so far from home. According to orders, which he received from Sir Henry Clinton, Cornwallis marched his army to YORKTOWN, and built fortifications there. He did this in order to have a strong place to retreat to, if he should be defeated when he set out to conquer the State of Virginia.

1. Whom had Washington put in command of the American troops in Virginia? Why did he not attack Cornwallis? How did some of La Fayette's troops behave? Where did Cornwallis march his army? Why did he fortify this place? Where is Yorktown? (See map.)

MAP OF VIRGINIA

Scale of Miles
0 10 20 30 40 50

81° Longitude 81°

West 81°

P. E. N. From 78

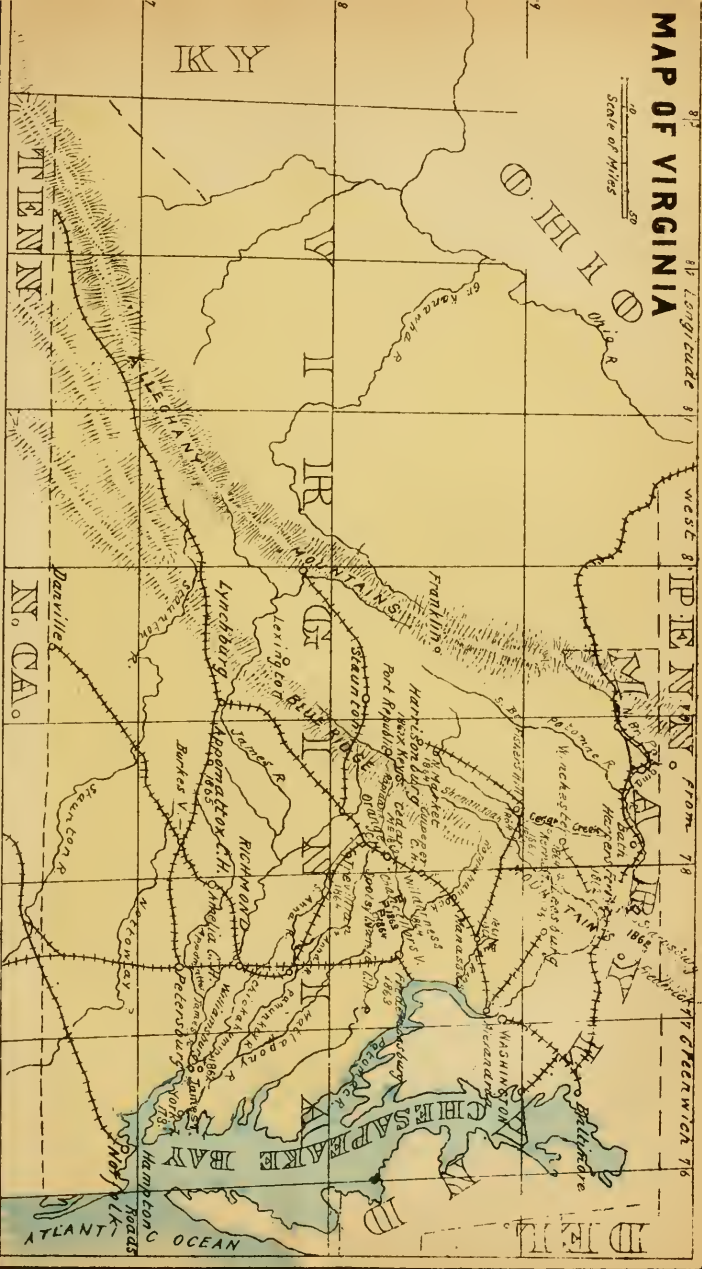
77° 76°

K Y

T E N N

N. CA.

ATLANTIC OCEAN





WASHINGTON MARCHES TO VIRGINIA (1781).

2. General Washington now formed a plan to capture the army of Cornwallis. He was near New York, and had an army of about ten thousand Americans. A French army of about five thousand soldiers, under COUNT DE ROCHAMBEAU, was also with him. Washington determined to march to Virginia, and capture the army of Cornwallis, before Sir Henry Clinton could get there. He expected, also, a large French fleet, under COUNT DE GRASSE, to blockade the York river, so that Cornwallis could not escape. Washington withdrew his army so quietly from the neighborhood of New York, that Sir Henry Clinton did not know he had gone until he had marched too far to be overtaken. Clinton then knew that Cornwallis was to be attacked, and sent him word to hold out until he arrived with his fleet and soldiers.

SIEGE OF YORKTOWN (1781).

3. On the 30th of September, Washington appeared before Yorktown at the head of the allied armies. He at once commenced the siege, while Count de Grasse blockaded the mouth of the York river. Washington planted heavy artillery, and kept up a tremendous fire upon the British works, day and night. Two redoubts of the British annoyed the besiegers. A column of French attacked one, and a column of Americans the other. Both were captured at the point of the bayonet.

2. Where was Washington's army at this time? How many men? How many French soldiers had he with him? What plan did Washington form? How did he expect the French fleet to assist him? Why did not Clinton follow Washington's army? What message did Clinton send to Cornwallis?

3. When did the siege of Yorktown commence? Who blockaded the York river? What assaults were made by the Americans and French? Were they successful? Relate the attempt of Cornwallis to escape.

Cornwallis at one time tried to escape. One dark night he commenced carrying his army across the York river. His plan was to march away to New York. But after he had landed part of his army, a terrible storm arose, and he could not cross over the remainder. So he brought back his soldiers the next day.

SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS (19TH OCT., 1781).

4. Finally, Lord Cornwallis saw that it was of no use for him to fight any longer; so he agreed to surrender his army and his ships. On the 19th day of October, the British soldiers marched out, and laid down their arms before the allied armies. Seven thousand British soldiers were surrendered, with all their muskets and cannon. General Lincoln was selected by Washington to receive the sword of Cornwallis, but the latter was so much mortified at his defeat, that he did not come out himself, but sent General O'Hara to give up his sword. Just before the British soldiers marched out, Washington said to his men: "My boys, let there be no insults over a conquered foe. When they lay down their arms, don't huzzah; posterity will huzzah for you." Five days after Cornwallis surrendered, Sir Henry Clinton appeared off the Capes with a large fleet and seven thousand troops; but on hearing of the surrender, he returned to New York. This SURRENDER closed the WAR OF THE REVOLUTION. No more battles were fought afterwards. The British saw that they

4. What did Cornwallis finally agree to do? When did the surrender take place? How many British soldiers were surrendered? Did Cornwallis appear himself? Whom did Washington select to receive his sword? What did Washington say to his men? Who appeared off the Capes five days after the surrender? Where did he return? Were any more battles fought after this? Why did the British treat for peace? What cities did the British soldiers still occupy?

could not conquer the Americans, and so they began to treat for peace. The British soldiers, however, continued to hold New York, Charleston, and Savannah, until the treaty was made.

EXPLOITS OF JOHN PAUL JONES.

5. During the Revolutionary War, the Americans had no regular navy. Congress, however, gave private individuals authority to sail ships under the American flag, and to make war on the British vessels. These ships were called privateers. JOHN PAUL JONES, a brave Scotchman, commanded some of these. He captured a great many British vessels. Sometimes he even sailed into English ports, and destroyed the shipping there. The hardest fight he had was with a British frigate, called the *Serapis*. Jones's vessel was named the *Bon Homme Richard*. They fought for a long time, and finally, Jones saw that his vessel was sinking. He had no idea, however, of surrendering. He approached the *Serapis*, and then made his men tie the masts of the two ships together. He then kept up his fire into the British vessel, until at last her captain surrendered to him. The King of Great Britain honored the captain of the *Serapis* so highly for his brave fight that he made him a knight. When Jones heard of it, he said, "If I meet him again on the sea, I will make a *lord* of him."

5. Had the Americans any navy during this war? How did they make war on the British vessels? What were these ships called? Who commanded one of these? What did he do? With what vessel did he have a severe fight? What was the name of the American vessel? Describe the fight. What result? How did the King of Great Britain honor the English captain? What did Jones say?

PEACE IS DECLARED (1783).

6. The British Government saw at last that they could not conquer the American colonies ; so they made a treaty with the American Government in November, 1783. By this treaty, the American colonies were declared *independent*, and all the territory on both sides of the Ohio and Mississippi rivers was granted to them. The last British soldiers left New York city on the 25th of November, 1783. General Washington then marched into the city, took down the British flag, and hoisted in its place the Stars and Stripes.

GEN. WASHINGTON RESIGNS HIS COMMISSION (1783).

7. Congress was in session at Annapolis. General Washington went there, and, on the 23d of December, 1783, resigned his commission as Commander-in-Chief, into the hands of Congress. He then retired to his mansion at Mount Vernon, on the bank of the Potomac. Many persons wanted him to keep command of the army and make himself *King* ; but he was a true patriot, and, having made his country free, he wanted the States to govern themselves. Congress disbanded the army, and all the soldiers retired peaceably to their homes.

6. When did the British Government make a treaty with the Americans ? What were the terms of this treaty ? When did the British soldiers leave New York ?

7. Where was Congress in session ? What act did Washington perform ? When ? Where did he then go ? What did many persons wish him to do ? Why would he not agree to this ? What did Congress do with the army ?

SECTION III.

CONVENTION MEETS AT PHILADELPHIA (1787).

1. It has been seen that the THIRTEEN COLONIES, or STATES, had made a *league* among themselves in order to carry on the war with Great Britain. This League remained in force after the war. By this, however, the Congress had no power to carry out the laws it made. Congress could not even raise money enough to pay the debt made in carrying on the war. During the war, they had issued paper money, but they were obliged to print so much of it, that the money, called "*Continental money*," became almost worthless. It took six hundred dollars of Continental money to buy a pair of boots! In order to make a better Government, some of the best men from each State (except Rhode Island) were sent to meet in Convention at Philadelphia in 1787

STRUGGLE FOR POWER BETWEEN THE SECTIONS.

2. For three months these delegates debated the terms of the CONSTITUTION. All the States north of Maryland and Delaware were called the FREE STATES. All those south of that line were called SLAVE STATES. The Free States wanted to have more representatives in Congress than the Slave States, so that they could

1. How had the thirteen States been joined during the war? What was the defect of this league? How had Congress raised money during the war? What was this money called? Why did it become almost worthless? How much did a pair of boots cost? What was done in order to make a better government? What State did not send delegates? When did this Convention meet?

2. What was framed by these delegates? Which States were called "Free States"? Which "Slave"? How did the Free States want to get power? What part of the Southern population did they want to leave out in counting? What would have been the effect of this? Did the South agree to this? What did the South finally agree to? Why did she agree to this? What other dispute was there in the Convention? What did the small States want? What, the large? What compromise was finally made?

govern the whole country. Hence, they did not want the Slave States to count their slaves in their population. By this plan, the South, or Slave States, would have very few representatives in Congress. The South refused to allow this to be done. Finally, the South agreed to let only three-fifths of her slaves be counted in the population. The Southern members made this agreement because they thought their section would soon have more people than the North. The soil of the Southern States was so much more fertile that they thought emigrants from Europe would settle in the South rather than in the North. There was a dispute also between the *small* States and the *large* States. The former wanted to have just as many representatives in both houses of Congress as the large States; whereas the latter wanted each State to be represented according to the number of its people. Finally, the matter was compromised. Each State in the Senate was allowed an equal number of representatives, while in the House of Representatives the number from each State was fixed according to its population.

PROVISIONS OF THE CONSTITUTION.

3. Finally, the Constitution was finished, and the Convention adjourned. All the States had to agree to it separately before it could become the law of the land. All the States agreed to it in 1788, except Rhode Island

3. What was necessary before the Constitution could become the law of the land? How many States agreed in 1788 to adopt this Constitution? When did North Carolina come into the Union? When, Rhode Island? According to the Constitution, what was to make the laws? What, to expound them? Who, to execute them? How many branches has Congress? In the Senate, how many members has each State? Elected for what time? In the House of Representatives, how is the number of members from each State regulated? Elected for what time? For what time is the President elected? By whom are the Judges appointed? For what time?

and North Carolina. North Carolina did not come into the Union until 1789, and Rhode Island in 1790. By this Constitution there was to be a Congress to make the laws; a Supreme Court to expound them; and a President to execute them. Congress has two branches, a Senate, and a House of Representatives. In the former, each State has two members, elected for six years; in the latter, each State sends members according to the number of her people, and they are elected for two years. The President is elected for four years. The Judges are appointed by the President, with the consent of the Senate, and hold their office during life, or good behavior.

REVIEW QUESTIONS ON PART II.

	PAGE.
1. What was the cause of the American Revolution?.....	77
2. How was Great Britain unjust to the Colonies?.....	77 78
3. What was the Stamp Act? When passed?.....	78
4. How did Virginia oppose the Stamp Act?.....	78 79
5. What was done by the Stamp Act Congress?.....	79
6. State the reason why the Stamp Act was repealed.....	79
7. Give the history of the Tea Tax.....	80
8. State what was done by the Congress in 1774.....	81
9. Give an account of the Battle of Lexington.....	81 82
10. Of the capture of Ticonderoga.....	82 83
11. Of the Battle of Bunker's Hill.....	83 84
12. Give an account of the invasion of Canada.....	85 83
13. Of the evacuation of Boston.....	86
14. Of the attack on Fort Moultrie.....	87 88
15. When was the Declaration of Independence passed?.....	88
16. State the movements by which New York was taken.....	89
17. Give an account of the retreat through New Jersey.....	89
18. Of the Battle of Trenton.....	90
19. Of the Battle of Princeton.....	90 91
20. What were the main provisions of the "Articles of Confederation"?.....	91

	PAGE.
21. Give an account of the Battle of Brandywine.....	91 92
22. Of the battle of Germantown.....	92
23. Relate the history of Burgoyne's invasion.....	93-94 95
24. Relate the murder of Miss McCrea.....	91
25. What nation entered into an alliance with the United States? When?.....	96
26. What terms of peace did Great Britain offer in 1778?.....	96
27. Give an account of the Battle of Monmouth.....	97
28. Of the expedition tried by Massachusetts.....	98 99
29. Of the assault on Savannah.....	99
30. Of the surrender of Charleston, and operations of Cornwallis.....	99 100
31. State what is said about Marlon and Sumpter.....	100
32. Give an account of the Battle of Camden.....	109 101
33. Of the Battle of King's Mountain.....	101
34. Give the history of the treason of Benedict Arnold.....	101-102 103
35. Whom did Congress put in command at the South?.....	101
36. Give an account of the Battle of Cowpens.....	101
37. Describe the retreat through the Carolinas.....	105
38. Give an account of the battles by which Greene recovered South Carolina.....	105 105
39. Give an account of the operations of Cornwallis in Virginia....	106
40. Give the history of the capture of the army of Cornwallis.....	107 108
41. Relate the exploits of John Paul Jones.....	109
42. What were the terms of peace? When declared?.....	110
43. State the conduct of Washington at the close of the war.....	110
44. What were the defects of the Articles of Confederation?.....	111
45. Give the history of the Convention of 1787.....	111 112
46. State some of the provisions of the Constitution.....	112 113

PART III.

FROM THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE UNITED STATES TO THE GREAT SECTIONAL WAR.

1789 — 1861.

CHAPTER I.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF WASHINGTON, ADAMS, AND JEFFERSON. 1789—1809.

SECTION I.

WASHINGTON ELECTED PRESIDENT (1789).

1. Washington was elected first President. When he had served four years, he was elected again. After the Government was formed, Congress agreed to pay all the debts made by the States during the Revolution. Money affairs began to improve then, and the people to prosper.

LAND CEDED TO THE UNITED STATES (1791).

2. In 1791, North Carolina gave to the United States all her land lying west of the State. New York also gave Vermont. The United States Government paid her thirty thousand dollars for this territory.

FIRST CENSUS (1791).

3. In 1791, the first census was completed. There were three million nine hundred and twenty-nine thou-

1. Who was elected first President? At the end of four years, who was elected? After the Government was formed, what debts did Congress agree to pay? What effect did this have?

2. What land did North Carolina cede to the United States in 1791? What, New York? What did Congress pay for Vermont?

3. What was the population of the United States by the census of 1800? How many slaves?

sand people in the United States then. Of them, six hundred and ninety-five thousand were slaves.

INDIAN WAR (1791).

4. The Indians in the West were badly treated by the whites, and hence, they avenged themselves by killing and scalping many of the settlers. Washington sent two armies against them, but the Indians surprised them, and killed nearly all the soldiers. Finally, Washington sent General WAYNE, a brave officer who had fought well in the Revolution. The leader of the Indians was called "*Little Turtle*." He told his warriors that they had better make peace. "We shall not surprise them, now," said he, "for *Black Snake* never sleeps." The Indians called Wayne "*Black Snake*." The warriors would not make peace, however. So Wayne attacked them, and killed a great number. He drove the remainder further west, and built forts to keep them from the settlements.

VIRGINIA CEDES TERRITORY (1792).

5. In 1792, Virginia gave to the United States Government all the large tract of land extending out to the Mississippi river. Kentucky is part of this. Kentucky was then made a State.

4. What is said of the Indians in the West? What was the result of the first two expeditions sent against them? Whom did Washington finally send? Why did the Indian chief now advise peace? Did the warriors take his advice? What was the result of the battle? What did Wayne then do?

5. What tract did Virginia cede to the United States? When? What State was then admitted?

SETTLEMENT OF KENTUCKY (1775).

6. The first permanent settlement in Kentucky ("the Dark and Bloody Ground") was made by Daniel Boone. This remarkable man, accompanied by five companions, set out from North Carolina, in 1769, and explored Kentucky. After spending two years in that country, hunting and trapping, and having many perilous encounters with the Indians, Boone returned to North Carolina. He was so much pleased with the new country that he collected a band of emigrants, moved to Kentucky, and, finally, settled on the Kentucky river (1775). He called the place Boonsboro, and built a fort there for the protection of the settlers. The number of the settlers was increased, in 1777, by the arrival of Colonel Bowman at the head of one hundred Virginians. The Indians called the latter the "Long Knife," and feared them very much.

THE INDIANS ATTACK BOONSBORO.

7. The Indians attacked the settlers wherever they thought they could gain an advantage. Once they appeared before Boonsboro in large numbers, and demanded a surrender of the fort. Boone asked for two days' time to consider the question. In that time he collected provisions, and made every preparation for a sharp resistance. He then told the savages to take the place if they could. The Indians then tried a stratagem. They said they would retire without fighting, if some

6. What is the meaning of "Kentucky"? Who made the first settlement in Kentucky? In what State did Boone live at first? When did he explore Kentucky? What did he do on his return to North Carolina? Where did he and his party settle in Kentucky? How was the number of settlers increased in 1777? What did the Indians call the Virginians?

7. Did the Indians make war upon the settlers? Give an account of their attack upon Boonsboro.

men would come out of the fort and make a treaty with them. Boone agreed to the proposal. Nine men went out and met the Indians about sixty yards from the fort. The treaty was agreed upon and signed. The Indians then said that it was customary among them, in making a treaty, for two Indians to shake hands with every white man in the party. The whites agreed to this, but the Indians tried to drag them away. There was a desperate struggle, and, finally, the whites escaped safely to the fort, only one being wounded in the fight. The Indians then attacked the fort on all sides, but were repulsed. They next tried to dig a mine under the fort, but the whites counter-mined, and the Indians, perceiving this, gave up the attempt, and withdrew.

INDIAN WARFARE IN KENTUCKY.

8. In order to give some idea of the fights which the early settlers of Kentucky had with the Indians, we will relate an incident that occurred. A band of Indians had invaded one of the settled districts. One of the savages, in advance of his party, entered a house in which there were a negro man, a white woman, and her children. The savage at once seized the negro, but the latter was too strong for him, and threw him down. While they were struggling, the woman seized an axo and cut the Indian's head off. The other savages came up at this time, and tried to break the door down with their tomahawks. The brave woman seized an old gun-barrel, without any lock, put it out through an opening in the wall of the hut, and so frightened the savages

8. Give an account of the brave defence made by a white woman when attacked by the Indians.

that they withdrew. A party of men soon collected from the neighboring houses, and drove the Indians back into the forest.

PEACE WITH THE INDIANS (1782).

9. The Indians continued to annoy the settlers, until at last Boone, assisted by General Clark, commanding at the Falls of the Ohio, invaded their settlements, and destroyed their houses and corn. The Indians then begged for peace, which was granted them. At the the council the Indian Chief, Piankashaw, said: "We plant the tree of peace, that God may spread branches, so that we can all be secured from bad weather. You see, Father, we have buried the tomahawk; and now as one people we smoke out of your pipe. We are now a poor people. God, we hope, will help us; and our Father, the Long Knife, will have pity and compassion on our women and children." After this treaty, the settlers in Kentucky were not much disturbed by the Indians.

SLAVE TRADE ABOLISHED (1794).

10. In 1778, Virginia had passed a law to prevent persons from bringing negroes from Africa and selling them in her limits. So much money, however, was made by this trade, that the New England vessels still kept it up, though contrary to law. Finally, Congress passed a law, in 1794, to have this trade stopped.

9. Who assisted Boone against the Indians? What did they do in the Indian settlements? What was the result of this expedition? Were the settlers in Kentucky troubled after this? When was this treaty made?

10. What law did Virginia pass in 1778? Who still kept up the traffic? When did Congress stop this trade?

TENNESSEE ADMITTED (1796).

11. In 1796, Tennessee was admitted as a State into the Union. The name is the same as that given by the Indians to its principal river, and signifies in their language a "curved spoon." Tennessee at first belonged to North Carolina, but was ceded by that State to the United States in 1789. It was first settled in 1765. In 1771, the inhabitants of western North Carolina were treated so cruelly by the British Governor of the colony, that many of them removed with their families to Tennessee. Fort Loudoun was the first fort erected by the settlers within the limits of this State, and was located on the Tennessee river in what is now called East Tennessee. Tennessee was included within the limits of the Territory established by Congress in 1791 called the "Territory of the United States south of the Ohio."

WASHINGTON'S "FAREWELL."

12. After Washington had served eight years as President, the people wanted to elect him again. He refused, however, and determined to retire from public life. Upon withdrawing from office, he published a "FAREWELL ADDRESS." In this, he called on his countrymen to obey the laws strictly; to show good faith and justice to each other; and to look upon religion and morality as the pillars of human happiness. He then retired to

11. When was Tennessee admitted into the Union? What is the meaning of the name? To what State did Tennessee first belong? When was it ceded to the United States? When was it first settled? Why did settlers move to Tennessee in 1771 from North Carolina? What fort was first erected? Where located? To what Territory did Tennessee belong before she became a State?

12. How many years was Washington President? Was he willing to serve any longer? What advice did he give his countrymen in his "farewell address"? Where did he live till the close of his life? Where did he die? How were the people affected?

Mount Vernon, where he lived the rest of his life. He died there in 1799, on the 14th of December. All the people were filled with sorrow at this sad event, for they looked upon him as the "FATHER OF HIS COUNTRY."

SECTION II.

JOHN ADAMS BECOMES PRESIDENT (1797).

1. After Washington withdrew from office, JOHN ADAMS, of Massachusetts, became President. Before his death, General Washington, by the direction of Congress, had selected a site for the CAPITAL of the United States. It was called WASHINGTON, in honor of its founder. It is located on the left bank of the Potomac, about one hundred miles from the mouth of the river. Virginia and Maryland gave the United States one hundred square miles around this point. Afterwards, the land on the right bank was given back to Virginia. Congress commenced holding its meetings at Washington in 1800.

JEFFERSON BECOMES PRESIDENT (1801).

2. In 1801, THOMAS JEFFERSON, of Virginia, became President of the United States. He was the writer of the Declaration of Independence. While he was President, the United States bought LOUISIANA from

1. Who became the second President? When? Who selected the site for the capital of the United States? Where is it located? What States gave this territory to the United States? What part was afterwards ceded back? When did Congress first meet at Washington?

2. Who became third President? When? Of what was he the author? What tract of country was bought by the United States during his administration? What amount was paid for it? What was the extent of this territory?

France for fifteen millions of dollars. The territory thus bought not only included the present State of Louisiana, but also all the land between the Mississippi river and the Pacific Ocean.

WAR WITH TRIPOLI.

3. In 1801, the United States declared war against TRIPOLI. This is a country on the northern coast of Africa, and its ruler was called *Dey*. The Dey of Tripoli used to send vessels out into the Mediterranean Sea and capture American vessels. All those found on board were taken to Tripoli and made slaves. The United States complained of this, but the Dey would not stop the practice. Finally, the United States sent a fleet to blockade the port at Tripoli. While this fleet was there, the *Philadelphia*, the largest vessel of the fleet, ran aground in the harbor. A large number of Tripolitan gunboats then attacked this ship, and it was obliged to surrender.

GALLANT ACT OF LIEUTENANT DECATUR.

4. Lieutenant DECATUR, a brave young American officer, determined to burn the *Philadelphia* in order to prevent the Tripolitans from using her. So, one dark night, he went on board a small schooner, with seventy men, and sailed into the harbor. When he reached the *Philadelphia*, he and his men climbed up her sides, and killed or captured all on board. He then set fire to the ship, and returned, without having lost a single

3. Against what government was war declared by the United States in 1801? Where is Tripoli? What was the cause of this war? What port was blockaded? Relate the capture of the *Philadelphia*.

4. Relate the gallant feat performed by Decatur. Why did the Dey agree to make peace? What terms did he agree to?

man. After this, the Americans sent a force to attack Tripoli by land. The Dey then agreed to make peace. He delivered up all his slaves, and promised not to disturb American vessels afterward.

CHAPTER II.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, AND THE WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN.

SECTION I.

JAMES MADISON BECOMES PRESIDENT.

1. In 1809, JAMES MADISON, of Virginia, became President of the United States. While he was President, the United States had another WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN. It was brought about in the following manner: Great Britain was carrying on a war with Napoleon Bonaparte, who was Emperor of France. The British had a great many vessels, and were blockading the ports of France, in order to prevent the French from getting assistance from other nations. The British Government declared that no vessels from foreign nations should go into the French ports. They also claimed the right for their ships to stop any American vessel they met at sea, and to take away any of the American crew whom they might think to be citizens of Great Britain. The British captains did this in several instances. The American Government determined to protect its citizens; and as the British

1. Who became the fourth President? When? What war occurred during his administration? State the cause of this war. When was war declared?

Government would not change its orders, the United States declared war. This was done on the 12th of June, 1812.

NEW ENGLAND OPPOSES THE WAR.

2. In the New England States, nearly all the people were opposed to the war with Great Britain. They had a great many vessels on the ocean, and they were afraid these vessels would be captured by the British. The Americans had only one hundred and eighty-five war vessels, while the British had more than one thousand.

HULL'S CAMPAIGN (1812).

3. CANADA at that time, as now, belonged to Great Britain. The Americans formed a plan to invade Canada at three points, viz.: *Detroit*, *Niagara*, and by way of *Lake Champlain*. All these armies were then to unite, and march upon MONTREAL, an important town on an island in the St. Lawrence river. General HULL was in command of the American army which was to invade at Detroit. He crossed over into Canada on the 12th of July, 1812. He then published a grand proclamation, calling on the Canadians to join his army. The Canadians did not, however, join him. The British collected a small army and marched against Hull. This frightened him, and so he came back with his army to

2. What States opposed this war? Why? How many naval vessels had the United States? How many had Great Britain?

3. What invasion was planned by the American Government? At what points? What city were these armies to attack? Where is Niagara? (See map facing p. 82.) Where is Lake Champlain? Montreal? Who commanded the American army at Detroit? What movement did he make? What proclamation? Did the Canadians join him? Why did he retreat to Detroit? Who commanded the British? What movement did he make? What advantages had Hull? Why did Hull surrender? What became of Hull afterwards?

Detroit. General Brock, the commander of the British, then crossed over his army, and marched upon Detroit. When he arrived in front of Hull's army, he demanded the surrender of it. Hull had more men than the British, and they were eager to fight, and had a strong position. Hull, however, was afraid that, if the British should beat him, the Indians would get *his scalp*. The Indians were fighting on the side of the British during this war. Hull drew his men up in line, made them stack arms, and surrendered them all to the British before they knew what he was going to do. When he was exchanged, the President had him tried by court-martial. He was declared guilty of cowardice, and sentenced to be shot. However, as he was an old man, the President simply had him turned out of the army.

OPERATIONS AT NIAGARA (1812).

4. The Americans were not more successful this year, at other points. Part of the army, on the Niagara river, was crossed over into Canada, but the remainder of the soldiers refused to go over. So the British attacked those that had crossed, and killed or captured every man of them. No attempt was made to invade Canada by way of Lake Champlain, as was intended.

CONDUCT OF MASSACHUSETTS AND CONNECTICUT.

5. In order to get soldiers to carry on the war, President Madison was authorized by Congress to call on the State Governments to furnish troops. MASSACHUSETTS

4. What occurred at Niagara? Was Canada invaded from Lake Champlain?

5. What authority did Congress give President Madison? What States refused to furnish troops? Why?

and CONNECTICUT refused to furnish their share of troops when they were called on for them by President Madison. They said that they did not want the war to go on, and that they were better judges of its necessity than Congress was.

SECTION II.

CAMPAIGN OF 1813.

1. The Americans had three armies at the beginning of the campaign of 1813. One, called the *Army of the Northwest*, was located at the head of Lake Erie, and was commanded by General HARRISON. The second, called the *Army of the Centre*, commanded by General DEARBORN, was between Lakes Ontario and Erie. The third, called the *Army of the North*, under the command of General HAMPTON, was on the shores of Lake Champlain.

GENERAL HARRISON'S OPERATIONS (1813).

2. Part of General Harrison's army was stationed at Fort Defiance, and was commanded by General Winchester. About the middle of January, General Winchester advanced towards Detroit. At Frenchtown, on the river Raisin, he was attacked by a large force of British and Indians, commanded by Colonel Proctor. After a hard fight, General Winchester agreed to surrender, if the Indians would not be allowed to kill his troops when they became prisoners. Proctor agreed to

1. What were the names of the three American armies at the beginning of the campaign of 1813? Where was each located? By whom commanded?

2. Where was part of Harrison's army stationed? Relate what took place at Frenchtown. What became of the prisoners?

this. After the surrender, however, he put the prisoners under the charge of the Indians in the rear, and more than five hundred of them were massacred. This horrible act roused the Americans, and made many a brave man shoulder his rifle and join the army.

SIEGE OF FORT MEIGS (1813).

3. After this disaster, General Harrison placed his army at the Rapids of the Maumee. Here he built a fort, calling it *Fort Meigs*. Proctor appeared before the fort, in April, at the head of two thousand British and Indians, and called upon General Harrison to surrender. Harrison told him to take the fort, if he could. Proctor then commenced a siege, and shelled the fort furiously. The Indians did their part, too. Every time they saw the head of an American soldier above the rampart, they let fly a bullet at him. They were such good marksmen that the Americans did not venture to expose themselves often. However, Proctor could not capture the fort. While he was besieging it, he was attacked on one side by the garrison, who came out of the fort, and on the other, by General Clay, at the head of about eleven hundred Kentuckians. Proctor beat General Clay badly, but General Harrison succeeded in damaging his cannon and works around the fort. This discouraged the Indians so much that they would not stay with the British any longer, and so Proctor had to give up the siege.

3. What fort did Harrison build? Where? Who attacked him? Relate the incidents of the siege. How was Proctor attacked? Why did Proctor give up the siege?

GALLANT DEFENCE BY MAJOR CROGHAN (1813).

4. During the summer of this year, Proctor made an attack on Fort Stephenson, on the Sandusky river. This fort was commanded by Major CROGHAN, a gallant American officer, only twenty-two years old. Proctor had thirteen hundred British and Indians, and many cannon. Croghan had only one hundred and sixty men, and *one* cannon. However, he determined to defend the fort to the last. Proctor cannonaded it until he made a breach in the walls, and then ordered an assault. But the Americans met them at the opening with their rifles and little cannon, and kept up such a sharp fire, that Proctor's soldiers were driven back. At one time, eighty of the British leaped *over* the pickets into the ditch, but these were all killed *or* captured. Proctor was so much frightened at his defeat, that he retreated quickly, leaving behind all his wounded, and his dead unburied.

PERRY'S VICTORY (1813).

5. General Harrison had been prevented from marching upon Detroit because the British fleet had control of Lake Erie. Commodore PERRY removed this obstacle. He had succeeded in building a fleet in a harbor of Lake Erie, and, finally, set out to hunt up the British fleet. The two fleets met in Lake Erie, about forty miles from Detroit. The British had six vessels, carrying sixty-nine cannon; while the Americans had nine

4. Where was Fort Stephenson? Who commanded there? Give an account of the siege of this fort.

5. Why had not Harrison marched upon Detroit? Who removed this obstacle? Where did the two fleets meet? How many vessels and cannon had the British? How many had the Americans? Give an account of the battle. Result?

vessels with only fifty-six cannon. At the beginning of the fight the *Detroit* and *Queen Charlotte*, the two largest of the British vessels, attacked the *Lawrence*. Commodore Perry was on board the *Lawrence*. The British vessels, finally, disabled the *Lawrence*. The gallant Commodore, however, got into an open boat, and rowed over to the *Niagara*, amid a perfect tempest of balls. He then raised his flag on the *Niagara*, and continued the fight. After fighting till four o'clock in the evening, the whole British fleet surrendered. Commodore Perry wrote to General Harrison: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

BATTLE OF THE THAMES (5TH OCT., 1813).

6. This victory was of great advantage to the Americans. General Harrison put his army on board the fleet, and crossed over into Canada to attack Fort Malden. Proctor, however, abandoned the fort and retreated. The British also retreated from Detroit into Canada. Harrison pursued them, and overtook the British, under Proctor, at a Moravian village, on the THAMES, about eighty miles from Detroit. Proctor's line of battle reached from the river to a swamp. The Indians, under TECUMSEH, their great chief, held the swamp. Colonel Johnson, at the head of the mounted Kentuckians, charged the British line, broke through, and formed in their rear. Proctor himself escaped with a few dragoons, but nearly all the remainder of his soldiers surrendered. The Indians still held out. Again the

6. What movement did Harrison now make? Where did he overtake Proctor? Who commanded the Indians? Give an account of the battle. What became of Proctor? Tecumseh? Were there any more battles fought in the West? Where did Harrison leave one thousand men? Where did he take the remainder of his army?

brave Kentuckians charged. The Indians fought bravely. Finally, Colonel Johnson determined to kill Tecumseh in order to discourage the Indians. So he rode straight towards him, and, just as Tecumseh fired and killed his horse, Johnson shot Tecumseh dead with his pistol. The Indians then surrendered, or escaped. This battle closed the war in the West. General Harrison left one thousand men at Detroit; sent a great part of his volunteers to their homes; and went with the remainder of his army to join the *Army of the Centre*, at Buffalo, New York.

CHAPTER III.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, AND THE WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN (CONTINUED).

SECTION I.

CAPTURE OF YORK (1813).

1. In October, 1812, the Americans commenced building a fleet at Sackett's Harbor, on Lake Ontario. By the spring of 1813, the fleet was completed, and Commodore CHAUNCEY was put in command of it. He soon gained entire possession of Lake Ontario. General Dearborn then put his army of six thousand men on board transports, and sailed across the Lake. He landed them near York, the capital of Upper Canada. The British had a large amount of military stores at this

1. Where did the Americans commence building a fleet in 1812? Where is Sackett's Harbor? (See map facing p. 82.) What advantage did Commodore Chauncey gain with this fleet in 1813? What movement did Dearborn then make? What town did he attack? Give an account of the attack. What American officer was killed? Where did Dearborn then carry his army?

place. General Dearborn resolved to capture it. He, accordingly, advanced, General PIKE commanding the vanguard of the army. This General bravely attacked the British fortifications, drove the enemy from their outer works, and was advancing towards the main defences. The British, at this moment, set fire to their magazine, containing five hundred barrels of gunpowder. The explosion was terrible. More than one hundred Americans were thrown into the air. A falling stone struck General Pike on the head and mortally wounded him. He, however, called to his men to "move on, and avenge their General." They charged on, and captured the town, and all the British army. General Pike's body was wrapped in the captured flag, and buried. General Dearborn then destroyed the British stores, and, afterward, sailed to the Niagara river, and landed his army.

CAPTURE OF FORT GEORGE (1813).

2. The British had two forts on the Niagara river. Fort George was near Lake Ontario; and Fort Erie was near Lake Erie. General Dearborn determined to attack Fort George. He, accordingly, sent across a strong force, under Colonel WINFIELD SCOTT. Colonel Scott assaulted the fort and captured it. Afterwards, the British evacuated Fort Erie. The Americans followed the British into Canada, but were, finally, driven back with considerable loss.

2. What forts had the British on the Niagara? Which did Dearborn attack? Who led the attack? What result? What fort did the British then evacuate? Relate the movements afterwards.

BRITISH ATTACK SACKETT'S HARBOR (1813).

3. After General Dearborn had left Sackett's Harbor, Sir GEORGE PREVOST, the British commander in Canada, landed about one thousand men near that place, and advanced upon it. General BROWN had a few regulars, and one thousand New York militia to guard the place. When the British came in sight, the militia fired one volley in the air, and then took to their heels. The regulars fought bravely, retreating gradually towards the town. General Brown, in the meanwhile, collected about one hundred militia, and marched them around towards the rear of the British. Prevost, thinking this was a fresh army coming to attack him, retreated to his vessels, and sailed away. Lieutenant Chauncey, an American officer, thought the British were sure to take the place, and, hence, set fire to the store-houses and barracks, and did as much damage as the British could have done, even if they had been victorious.

ADVANCE TOWARDS MONTREAL (1813).

4. The American Generals now planned an attack upon Montreal. General Wilkinson (who succeeded General Dearborn) was to advance down the St. Lawrence, and meet an army, under General Hampton, from Plattsburg. They were then to go forward and capture Montreal, before winter set in. When General Wilkinson reached St. Regis, however, he received a message

3. Who commanded the British in Canada? What place did he attack? Relate the affair. What damage was done by Lieutenant Chauncey?

4. What city did the American Generals now plan to attack? Who had succeeded Dearborn? Who commanded at Plattsburg? Where is Plattsburg? (See map facing p. 82.) What was the plan of the campaign? What place did Wilkinson reach? Where is St. Regis? Why did not the campaign succeed? Where did the two armies winter?

from General Hampton that he could not join him. So he had to give up the expedition. He then put his army in winter-quarters at French Mills; while Hampton remained at Plattsburg.

BRITISH DEPREDATIONS ON THE COAST OF THE SOUTHERN STATES (1813).

5. As the people of New England were opposed to the war, the British fleet did not disturb their coast. At the South, however, where they knew the people were very much in favor of the war, they did a great deal of damage. Admiral COCKBURN landed the British marines at many places on the coasts of the Chesapeake Bay, and robbed the people, and burned the villages. At Frenchtown, on the Elk river, the militia assembled to keep back the British. As soon, however, as the marines came in sight, away ran the militia. One man, however, a brave Irishman, named O'Neil, stood his ground. He had an old cannon, and he kept loading it and firing it at the marines. At last, it recoiled and ran over his leg, laming him seriously. He picked up a musket, however, and, as he limped away, kept firing it at the advancing British.

SECTION II.

THE CREEK WAR (1813).

1. During this year, the Indians were very troublesome on the frontier of Georgia. The Creeks inhabited

5. Why did not the British disturb the New England coast? Why did they plunder at the South? What was done by Admiral Cockburn? Relate the affair at Frenchtown.

1. What Indians were troublesome in 1813? Where did they live? Who induced them to make war? What fort did they capture? What became of the prisoners?

what is now called Alabama. Tecumseh, the great Indian chief, who was killed at the Battle of the Thames, had come South at the beginning of the war. He was a great orator, and the Indians felt a great reverence for him. He made a speech to the Creeks, and induced them to make war on the Americans. Before the Americans knew they were in danger, the Creeks attacked and captured Fort Mimms, on the Alabama river. They killed and scalped all that were in the fort, except seventeen, who managed to make their escape.

GENERAL JACKSON DEFEATS THE CREEKS (1813).

2. The Americans were roused by this cruel massacre, and thousands of volunteers came forward from Tennessee and Georgia. General ANDREW JACKSON was put in command of them. Jackson fought the Indians, and gained a number of victories. Finally, he attacked them at Horse-Shoe Bend (called by the Indians *Tohopeka*), on the Tallapoosa. Nearly all of the tribe were killed. Their leader, Weatherford, then came to beg for peace. "There was a time," said he, "when I had a choice. I have none now; even hope is ended. Once I could animate my warriors; but I cannot animate the dead. They can no longer hear my voice. Their bones lie on many battle-fields." Jackson granted him peace.

BATTLES NEAR NIAGARA (1814).

3. When the campaign of 1814 commenced, General Brown was in command of the American army, located

2. What States sent volunteers against the Creeks? Who commanded these troops? Was Jackson successful in his battles? Where did he finally defeat the Indians? What resulted from this battle? State what Weatherford said? Did Jackson grant peace?

3. Who commanded the Americans near Niagara? What fort did he capture? What movement did he then make? Where did he defeat the British?

near Niagara. On the 2d of July, he crossed the Niagara river, and captured Fort Erie. He then advanced down the left bank of the Niagara, and, on the 5th of July, he defeated the British army at the mouth of CHIPPEWA Creek.

BATTLE OF BRIDGEWATER (25TH JULY, 1814).

4. The British army was then reinforced by a large force from Fort George, and was commanded by General Drummond. Many of these British soldiers had lately come from Europe, where they had fought and conquered Napoleon Bonaparte. General Brown, however, was not afraid to fight them. On the 25th of July, he attacked them at BRIDGEWATER, near the Cataract of Niagara. The battle was long and bloody. During the heat of the fight, Scott's brigade was much annoyed by a British battery of nine cannon, posted on a hill at the head of Lundy's Lane. "Will you capture that battery?" said General Ripley to Colonel Miller, of the 21st Regiment. "I will try," was the modest answer. He *did* try, and *captured* it, at the point of the bayonet. Around this spot the battle raged till long after dark. Four times the British charged, but were repulsed every time. The roar of the cannon and the rattle of the musketry were heard above the sound of the neighboring cataract. Finally, the British gave up the fight, and retired from the field. Generals Brown and Scott were both wounded in this

4. How were the British reinforced? Who commanded them? Where did Brown attack the British? When? Describe the battle. Who gained the victory? What American Generals were wounded? Who took command then? What movement did he make? What did **he** British do? Did they capture the fort? What did the Americans do after the British had retired?

battle. A few days afterward, General Ripley, in command of the Americans, retired to Fort Erie. The British besieged this place for forty-nine days, but failed to take it. After they retired, the Americans recrossed the river into New York.

MCDONOUGH'S VICTORY (11TH SEPT., 1814).

5. About this time, Sir George Prevost crossed the frontier at the head of 14,000 of "*Wellington's Invincibles*," and advanced into New York down the western shore of Lake Champlain. General MACOMB had only 5,000 Americans to meet this army. He, however, threw up strong earthworks along the Saranac river, and determined to fight the British there. The British had also a fleet of seventeen vessels on Lake Champlain, under Commodore Downie. The American fleet, of fourteen vessels, was commanded by Commodore McDONOUGH. There was a hot fight between the two fleets, while the land armies looked on from the shore. In two hours and twenty minutes, the whole British fleet was either captured or sunk. The British then retired with their land army into Canada. This ended the fighting on the Canada frontier.

CAPTURE OF WASHINGTON (24TH AUG., 1814).

6. Farther South, the British were more successful. In August, a large British fleet sailed up the Patuxent

5. What movement did Prevost make? Where is Lake Champlain? (See map facing p. 82). Where is the Saranac river? Plattsburg? How far from New York? Who commanded the American army? How many vessels were in the British fleet? In the American? Who commanded the respective fleets? What was the result of the naval battle? What movement was then made by the British army?

6. Up what river did a British fleet sail in August? Where is the Patuxent river? (See map facing p. 82). How many soldiers were landed? Who commanded them? Where did Ross defeat the Americans? What city did he then capture? When? What buildings did he burn? For what place did he afterwards sail?

river, in Maryland, and landed five thousand soldiers at Benedict. General Ross, the commander of the British, then marched upon Washington City. At Bladensburg, he met a small American army, which he easily defeated. On the 24th of August, he took possession of WASHINGTON, and burned the Capitol, the Public Library, and all the Government buildings. General Ross then retired to his fleet, and sailed for Baltimore, saying that he intended to capture that city, and winter his troops there.

BOMBARDMENT OF FORT McHENRY (13TH SEPT., 1814).

7. He was mistaken in his expectation, however. His army was landed on the 12th of September, at NORTH POINT, and he marched on Baltimore. Soldiers, however, had been collected to resist him. In a skirmish with the Americans, General Ross was killed. Colonel Brooke, who succeeded him, then halted the army till he could get news from the fleet. The latter had sailed on to attack Fort McHENRY. This fort was two miles from Baltimore, and was garrisoned by one thousand Americans, under Major Armistead. There were sixteen vessels in the British fleet. These rained a perfect storm of shot and bombs into the fort during the whole day. The garrison replied gallantly. Finally, the British fleet gave up the attack. They then took on board their land army, and, soon afterwards, left the Chesapeake for the South.

7. Where did Ross land his army? Where is Baltimore? Where is North Point? How far from Baltimore? What became of Ross? Why did the British army halt? What fort did the fleet attack? How far is this fort from Baltimore? What was the number of its garrison? Who commanded them? How many vessels were in the British fleet? Describe the attack. What result? What was finally done by the British?

CHAPTER IV.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, AND THE WAR WITH GREAT
BRITAIN.

SECTION I.

CONDUCT OF NEW ENGLANDERS (1814).

1. The people of the New England States were still very much opposed to the war. In September (1814), the British invaded East Maine, from Nova Scotia, and took possession of nearly half the State. Two-thirds of its inhabitants then swore allegiance to the British Government.

"BLUE LIGHT FEDERALISTS."

2. Some of the inhabitants along the coasts of New England gave important assistance to the British ships blockading the harbors. When it was known that a United States naval vessel was about to leave a harbor and try to get out to sea, information of the attempt was conveyed to the blockading vessels by raising blue lights as signals. In this manner the *United States* was retained in the harbor at New London, Connecticut.

HARTFORD CONVENTION (1814).

3. At Hartford, in Connecticut, there assembled on the 15th of December, 1814, the celebrated HARTFORD CONVENTION. This Convention was composed of dele-

1. What State was invaded by the British in 1814? How did the people of Maine behave?

2. How did the New Englanders on the coast aid the British? What U. S. vessel was thus kept in harbor?

3. Where did a Convention of New Englanders assemble? When? Who appointed delegates to this Convention? Did this Convention meet in open session? What was done by it? When were these delegates to meet again? What did they intend to do at that time? Why did they not meet?

gates appointed by the State Legislatures of Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut; and, also, some elected by counties in New Hampshire and Vermont. These were in secret session for three weeks. They then published an address, finding fault with the United States Government, and recommending seven amendments to the Constitution. When they adjourned, they agreed to meet again in June, 1815. They intended at that meeting to separate the New England States from the rest of the Union, and set up a government of their own. Before that time, however, peace was made, and, *hence*, they did not meet.

BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS (8TH JAN., 1815).

4. In December, 1814, the British landed an army of fourteen thousand men near NEW ORLEANS, Louisiana. General Packenham was in command of them. He advanced, and camped his army about nine miles below the city. General Andrew Jackson commanded the American army. He had only six thousand men. He, however, determined to resist the British to the death. He, accordingly, threw up breastworks (composed partly of bales of cotton), about one thousand yards long. They reached from the Mississippi river to a deep swamp. So the British were obliged to attack him in front. The British advanced to the attack in two dense columns. Some of the men carried fascines for filling the ditches, and ladders for scaling the

4. Where did the British army land in December, 1814? What number? Who commanded them? Who commanded the Americans? How many men had he? What defences had Jackson's army? Describe the battle. When fought? Where is New Orleans? (See map facing p. 87.) What was the result of the battle? How many men did the British lose? Americans? Were there any more battles fought during this war?

ramparts. The Americans calmly awaited their approach, till they came within easy range. They then poured upon the British such a storm of balls from cannon and rifles that they were obliged to retreat. General Pakenham tried to rally them, but was killed in the act. Again the enemy advanced, and again the carnage in their ranks compelled them to retire. Many of the Americans were Western hunters, and whenever their rifles cracked, down went a British soldier. Finally, the British made a third and last assault. Headed by their brave officers, they charged up to the ditch, and some even mounted the ramparts. But the gallant defenders still kept up their deadly and unceasing fire. Almost every shot killed its man. At last, discouraged by the death of their comrades, and the loss of their commanders, the British retreated in great disorder. The British lost in this battle, nearly twenty-six hundred men. The Americans lost only *seven* killed, and *six* wounded. The British retreated to their vessels, and soon after embarked, and sailed away. This was the last battle fought on land during the war.

SECTION II.

NAVAL BATTLES (1812-1815).

1. Many battles were fought at sea during this war. Only some of the most important will be mentioned. The British had a great many war vessels. In fact, their navy was so large, and their sailors so brave, that

1. Why did the British expect to beat the Americans at sea? Why were the Americans sometimes successful?

no nation had been able to beat them at sea. They, accordingly, expected to beat the Americans every time they met them. But they were mistaken. The Americans, it is true, did not have many war vessels, but they had brave sailors, and good officers.

THE GUERRIÈRE CAPTURED (19TH AUG., 1812).

2. In the very first naval battle, the Americans gained the victory, In August (1812), Captain HULL, in command of the American frigate *Constitution*, was cruising off the Grand Bank of Newfoundland. He there fell in with the British frigate *Guerrière*, commanded by Captain Dacres. The latter had often expressed great contempt for the American navy, and had challenged any vessel of his own class to fight him. As soon as the *Constitution* hove in sight, the English captain commenced firing, and kept it up as the two vessels approached each other. Captain Hull, however, waited until they came close together, and then gave the order to fire. Such a storm of balls then struck the British vessel that she surrendered in thirty minutes.

BATTLE BETWEEN THE WASP AND FROLIC.

3. On the 18th of October (1812), Captain Jones, in command of the U. S. sloop-of-war *Wasp*, attacked the British Brig *Frolic*, Captain Whingates, off the coast of North Carolina. The sea was very rough. The British fired their cannon when their vessel was rising on the wave, and, hence, their shot only injured the

2. Describe the battle between the *Guerrière* and *Constitution*. When fought? Where? Result?

3. Describe the battle between the *Wasp* and *Frolic*. When fought? Where? Result? What became of the *Wasp*?

sails of the *Wasp*. The Americans, on the contrary, fired as their vessel descended, and every shot struck either the hull, or on deck, of the *Frolic*. In forty-three minutes, the British ceased firing. The Americans then boarded, and found only *four* men alive and unwounded on deck. The British lost one hundred out of one hundred and twenty men. But the *Wasp* did not get into port. Two hours after her victory, a British seventy-four-gun ship captured her and her prize.

FIGHT BETWEEN THE CHESAPEAKE AND SHANNON (1813).

4. On the first of June (1813), Captain LAWRENCE was in the port of Boston, with his frigate, the *Chesapeake*. Captain Brooke, commanding the British frigate *Shannon*, stationed off the port, sent Lawrence a challenge to come out and fight him. Captain Lawrence accepted the challenge and sailed out. The two vessels fired broadside after broadside at each other. In a short time, about half the men of the *Chesapeake*, and all her officers, were either killed or wounded. The British then boarded, and hauled down her flag. Captain Lawrence was mortally wounded by the first broadside. He remained on deck, however, and his last order was: "*Don't give up the ship; fight her till she sinks.*"

CAPTURE OF THE ESSEX (1814).

5. Commodore DAVID PORTER, in command of the American frigate *Essex*, commenced cruising in the Pacific Ocean at the beginning of the war. Between

4. Who commanded the American frigate *Chesapeake*? How did his battle with the *Shannon* occur? Where? When? Describe the battle. Result? What was the last order of Lawrence?

5. Who commanded the American frigate *Essex*? Where did he cruise? With what success? Where was his vessel on March 28th, 1814? By what vessels was he attacked? What result?

that time and the year 1814, he captured British vessels, carrying in all one hundred and seven cannon and three hundred and two men. On the 28th of March, 1814, he was in the harbor of Valparaiso refitting his vessel, which had been damaged by a storm. He was here attacked by the British frigate *Phæbe*, and a sloop-of-war. Porter kept up the fight until all his officers but one, and nearly three-fourths of his crew, were killed or wounded. He then surrendered.

PEACE IS DECLARED (17TH FEB., 1815).

6. The battle of New Orleans was the last of the war. In fact, a treaty of peace had been signed before this, in Europe. The Senate of the United States agreed to this treaty on the 17th of February, 1815, and the war ceased.

ADMISSION OF MISSISSIPPI (1817).

7. In 1817, Mississippi was admitted into the Union. Its name signifies in the Indian language, the *Great Father of Waters*. The territory now comprising this State, together with Alabama, once belonged to Georgia. When ceded to the General Government, it was organized into the Mississippi Territory. The first settlement in this State was made by the French in 1716, at a point on the Mississippi river, where Natchez now stands.

6. When did the Senate agree to a treaty of peace?

7. When was Mississippi admitted into the Union? What does the name signify? To what State did this territory first belong? Into what Territory was it first organized? Who made the first settlement in Mississippi? Where? When?

CHAPTER V.

FROM MONROE TO POLK, 1817—1845.

JAMES MONROE, PRESIDENT (1017).

1. In March, 1817, James Monroe, of Virginia, became President of the United States. Two years afterwards, the first *steamboat* crossed the Atlantic Ocean. In the same year (1819), the United States bought FLORIDA from Spain, giving the latter five millions of dollars. They did not, however, get possession of the territory before 1821.

ADMISSION OF ALABAMA (1819).

2. Alabama was admitted into the Union in 1819. As stated above, its territory originally belonged to Georgia. The first permanent settlement within its limits was made by the French at Mobile. It was the scene of the terrible war with the Indians, in 1813 and 1814, when General Jackson defeated the Creeks in so many battles. Alabama signifies in the Indian language, *Here we rest*.

MISSOURI COMPROMISE (1820).

3. At the session of Congress in 1819-20, MISSOURI applied to be admitted as a State into the Union. The

1. Who became President in 1817? What occurred in 1819? What purchase was made by the United States in this year? For how much? When was possession given?

2. What State was admitted in 1819? To what State did the Territory formerly belong? Who made the first settlement in Alabama? When? Where? What battles took place in its limits? What does *Alabama* signify?

3. What State applied for admission in session of 1819-20? Why did the Northern members refuse to admit her? What other State applied at this time? Upon what terms did the Southern members say they would vote to admit Maine? What bargain was finally made? Did the Southern members keep their promise? How did the Northern members break theirs? How then was Missouri admitted?

Northern members, however, refused to admit her unless slavery was forbidden by her Constitution. There was a long debate in Congress about it. While this was going on, Maine applied also for admission. The Southern members now said they would not vote to admit Maine unless the Northern members voted to admit Missouri. Finally, they made a bargain to admit Maine and Missouri, and afterwards not to admit any State north of $36^{\circ} 30'$ north latitude, if it allowed slavery in its Constitution. The Southern members then, true to their promise, voted to admit Maine, and she became a State. When the time came, however, to admit Missouri, nearly all the Northern members broke their promise and voted *against* her admission. However, the few who voted with the Southern members were enough to make a majority, and Missouri also became a State.

LA FAYETTE'S VISIT (1824).

4. In 1824, LA FAYETTE, whom we have read about in the Revolutionary War, came on a visit to the United States. He was received with much enthusiasm everywhere by the people. On the 4th of July, 1826, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson died. In 1829, General ANDREW JACKSON of Tennessee, became President. He succeeded JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, of Massachusetts, who had served as the sixth President.

4. Who visited the United States in 1824? How was he received? What distinguished men died July 4th, 1826? Who became President in 1829? Whom did he succeed?

SEMINOLE WAR.

5. In 1835, the SEMINOLES, an Indian tribe dwelling in Florida, commenced a war with the United States. They were led by a brave chief called Osceola. The United States sent troops against them, but these were frequently defeated by the Seminoles. Finally, the latter were obliged to beg for peace. It was granted, and the tribe was removed to the West.

HIGH PROTECTIVE TARIFF.

6. The people of the Northern States were at this time, as well as now, largely engaged in manufacturing. They had to pay their workmen higher wages than were paid in Europe. Hence the Europeans were able to send their manufactures over to the United States and sell them at lower prices than the Northerners. The latter wanted to compel all the people of the United States to buy their manufactures. Hence, they tried for a long time to get Congress to tax European manufactures so high that they could not be sold cheaper than theirs. Finally, they succeeded, because there were more Northern members in Congress than Southern. The law they passed was called a HIGH PROTECTIVE TARIFF.

NULLIFICATION BY SOUTH CAROLINA (1832).

7. The people of the Southern States were mostly engaged in agriculture. They were obliged to buy

5. What war broke out in 1835? Who was the leader of the Seminoles? Who were successful at first? What was the final result? Where were the Seminoles removed?

6. What were the people of the Northern States engaged in? Why were the European manufacturers able to undersell the Northern? What did the latter want? How did they try to accomplish this? Why did they succeed? What was this law called?

7. What were the people of the Southern States engaged in? What were they obliged to buy? Why were they opposed to the High Protective Tariff? What did South Carolina say? What was this called?

nearly all the manufactured articles they used, and they very naturally, wanted to buy them as cheap as possible. Hence, they were opposed to this High Protective Tariff, which compelled them to pay to the Northerners such high prices for their goods. Finally, South Carolina said that Congress had no right to pass such a law, and it should not be executed in her limits. This was called NULLIFICATION.

COMPROMISE BILL OF MR. CLAY (1833).

8. President Jackson insisted on the law being carried out in South Carolina. He sent a fleet to Charleston, and was preparing to send soldiers also. South Carolina began also to raise an army, and there was a strong prospect of a civil war. This was prevented, however, by a *Compromise Bill*, offered by HENRY CLAY in Congress. By this Bill, the tax on foreign manufactured articles was to be gradually reduced until the year 1842, when it should be just high enough to raise money sufficient for carrying on the Government. Congress passed this Bill; the President signed it; and the South Carolinians agreed to it. The Northern members however, after 1842, broke this bargain, and passed still higher tariffs. On the 4th of March, 1837, MARTIN VAN BUREN, of New York, became President. In 1841, he was succeeded by General W. H. HARRISON, of Ohio. General Harrison, however, died in one month, and, according to the Constitution, JOHN TYLER, of Virginia, the Vice-President, became President for the remainder of the term.

8. What course did President Jackson pursue? How did South Carolina prepare to resist? How was war prevented? What was the provision of this Bill? Was it passed? When? Did South Carolina agree to it? How did the Northern members break this bargain? Who became President in 1837? Who succeeded him? When? When did Harrison die? Who then became President?

SETTLEMENT OF TEXAS.

9. The Spaniards made the first permanent settlement in TEXAS, at San Antonio de Bexar, in 1692. The neighboring country, MEXICO, also belonged to Spain. In 1820, Mexico revolted from Spain, and gained her independence. Spain also granted her, at this time, all that tract of territory now within the limits of Texas. In 1821, STEPHEN F. AUSTIN, a citizen of the United States, was granted, by the Mexican Government, a large tract of land in Texas. The climate being fine, and the land fertile, a great many citizens of the United States joined Austin, and settled in Texas.

TEXAN WAR (1835).

10. After living in Texas for some years, Austin and his settlers asked the Mexican Government to let them have a separate State Government of their own. Mexico refused this, and treated the Texans very cruelly. A war then broke out between the Texans and Mexico. On the 2d of March, 1836, the chief men of Texas met at Washington, on the Brazos river, and declared their State *independent* of Mexico. They also formed a Constitution, and organized a Government. Mexico sent a large army, under SANTA ANNA, into Texas, to conquer the State. The Texans, however, were brave soldiers. On the 21st of April, 1836, they beat this army badly at SAN JACINTO, and also captured Santa Anna. While

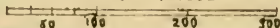
9. Who first settled Texas? Where? When? What country revolted from Spain? What territory was granted to her? Who was Austin? What grant was made to him? When? By whom was he joined?

10. What demand was made by Austin and the settlers? Was it granted? What occurred then? What did the Texans do in 1836? What did they form? What was done by Mexico? What occurred April 21st, 1836? What treaty did Santa Anna sign? Did the Mexican Government agree to this treaty?

Longitude West from Washington

MAP SHOWING MEXICAN CAMPAIGN

Scale of Miles



35

30

25

20

CHIHUAHUA

M

E

A

I

SAN LOUIS POTOSI

QUERETARO

MEXICO
St. Augustino
LA PUEBLA
Perote
Ayala
Gomez
Alvarado
To Amolico

MEXICO
GULF OF MEXICO

TEXAS

AUSTIN

SAN FELIPE
at
AUSTIN

Bexar

Saltillo
Buena Vista
Agua Nueva

Camargo
Yaracoa
Matamoros

Tampico

Louis I

Juspan

Perote

Ayala

Gomez

Alvarado

To Amolico

the latter was a prisoner, he signed a treaty with the Texans, granting them their independence. When he was released, however, the Mexican Government refused to agree to this treaty.

ANNEXATION OF TEXAS (1845).

11. In 1837, Texas applied to the United States to be received into the Union. Mr. Van Buren, then President, refused to grant this. When Mr. Tyler became President, he made a treaty with Texas, granting her admission as a State. The Senate of the United States, however, refused to agree to this treaty. However, when the Senate found that the people of the United States were in favor of this treaty, they, finally, on the 28th of February, 1845, passed a resolution to annex Texas to the United States.

CHAPTER VI.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES K. POLK; AND THE MEXICAN WAR.

SECTION I.

JAMES K. POLK BECOMES PRESIDENT (1845).

1. JAMES K. POLK, of Tennessee, became President in 1845. In the previous year, his nomination by the Convention at Baltimore had been announced in Wash-

11. What application did Texas make in 1837? What was done by Mr. Van Buren? By Mr. Tyler? By the Senate? Why did the Senate finally agree to this treaty? What resolution did it pass? When?

1. Who became President in 1845? How had his nomination been announced in 1844? What is said of this telegraphic line? Who made the invention? What order did President Polk give Gen. Taylor? Where did Taylor land? Where is Corpus Christi? (See map.)

ington by the MAGNETIC TELEGRAPH. This was the first telegraphic line established in the world. The honor of this invention is due to Morse, of Massachusetts. Soon after his inauguration, President Polk ordered General ZACHARY TAYLOR to lead an army into Texas, in order to protect that State from the Mexicans. Taylor, accordingly, in August, landed with an army of four thousand men at Corpus Christi.

WAR WITH MEXICO (1846).

2. Mexico declared war against the United States on the 23d of March, 1846. General AMPUDIA took command of the Mexican army at Matamoras, on the right bank of the Rio Grande, near its mouth. General Taylor had marched his army south, and was stationed on the Rio Grande, opposite to Matamoras.

BATTLES OF PALO ALTO AND RESACA DE LA PALMA (1846).

3. The Mexican army crossed the Rio Grande, and at noon, on the 8th of May, General Taylor found them drawn up in battle array at PALO ALTO (which signifies "Water-hole"). General Arista had six thousand soldiers, while Taylor had only twenty-three hundred. The latter, however, did not hesitate to attack the enemy. Forming his line of battle, he at once advanced upon the Mexicans. The Mexicans had a large body of cavalry armed with lances. These charged

2. When did Mexico declare war? Who took command of the Mexican army at Matamoras? Where is Matamoras? Where was Taylor's army stationed?

3. What movement was made by the Mexicans? Where were they drawn up? How many men had Arista? Taylor? Describe the battle. To what point did the Mexicans retreat? Describe the position. What was the result of this battle? When fought? Describe Captain May's charge. How far did the Mexicans retreat?

their weapons, and made a charge upon the American line. They were met, however, by a storm of cannon balls, and they broke and retreated to their army. The Mexican army then retreated about three miles to RESACA DE LA PALMA. Here, they had a deep ravine in their front, and an immense forest extended from their rear to the Rio Grande. General Taylor attacked them, here, next day, captured their artillery, broke their line, and drove them, routed, from the field. During this fight, Captain May, at the head of a body of dragoons, charged a Mexican battery, silenced the guns, and captured General La Vega as he was about to apply the match to one of the cannon. The Mexican army did not stop, in their retreat, until they had recrossed the Rio Grande. Many were drowned in the passage.

CAPTURE OF MONTEREY (24TH SEPT., 1846).

4. General Taylor next determined to invade Mexico, and capture MONTEREY. Accordingly, in August, he set out on his march from Camargo, a village on the Rio Grande, about one hundred and eighty miles from its mouth. Taylor's army had been reinforced, and now numbered six thousand six hundred and forty men. On the 9th of September, General Taylor arrived at Walnut Springs, three miles from Monterey. This city is about one hundred and fifty miles from Camargo, in the valley of the San Juan, and is surrounded on the south and west by the Sierra Madre mountains. It was garrisoned by nine thousand Mexican soldiers,

4. What did Taylor now determine to do? Where is Camargo? (See map facing p. 149.) Where is Monterey? Describe its situation. How large was the Mexican garrison? By whom commanded? How was the town defended? How many men had Taylor? What was his plan of attack? What was his success? What agreement was finally made?

under General AMPUDIA and had strong forts on all sides, in which were forty heavy cannon. General Taylor, however, did not hesitate to attack it. With the main army he attacked the city on the east, and sent part of the army, under General Wool, to attack from the opposite side. There was desperate fighting all day, and the Americans took many of the forts at the point of the bayonet. Finally, the Americans held all the city except the citadel. General Ampudia then demanded a parley. This was granted, and Taylor finally allowed the Mexican army to retire, leaving him in possession of the city.

BATTLE OF BUENA VISTA (23D FEB., 1847).

5. Soon after this event, General Taylor, by order of the United States Government, sent the larger part of his army to join General Scott, who was about to invade Mexico. Taylor, with the remainder of his army, camped at Agua Nueva, on the road leading from Saltillo to San Luis Potosi. Here he remained quiet for some months. The Mexican Government determined to make an effort to crush Taylor's small army. Accordingly, they sent General SANTA ANNA at the head of twenty-one thousand soldiers, to attack it. Taylor had only four thousand seven hundred and sixty-nine men. With these, he fell back to a ravine in the

5. Where was Taylor ordered to send the larger part of his army? Where did he camp with the remainder? Where is Agua Nueva? Saltillo? How far is Buena Vista from Monterey? Where is San Luis Potosi? How far from the city of Mexico? Who advanced to attack Taylor? How many men had he? Taylor? Where did Taylor post his army? Describe the battle. When fought? Were the Americans driven from their position? What movement did Santa Anna make in the night? How many men did the Mexicans lose? Americans? Was Taylor's army engaged in any more battles?

mountains, at BUENA VISTA eleven miles from Saltillo. Here he calmly awaited the Mexicans. When Santa Anna arrived in front, he sent forward a flag of truce, and called upon General Taylor to surrender his army. The latter politely declined. On the 23d of February (1847), Santa Anna attacked the Americans. The Mexicans, knowing that they had nearly five men to one, fought more bravely than they had ever done before. At one time, they broke General Taylor's left flank, completely routing the 2d Indiana Regiment, which never rallied during the progress of the battle. Colonel JEFFERSON DAVIS commanded a Mississippi regiment just in rear of the Indiana regiment. When the latter broke and fled, Davis ordered his men to open their ranks and let the runaways through, and then close their line to meet the enemy. Bravely did the Mississippians meet the shock. Finally, aided by Sherman's and Bragg's artillery, they drove back the Mexicans. Taylor, seeing the good effect produced by Bragg's cannon, called out, "*Give them a little more grape, Captain Bragg.*" The battle lasted all day, but when darkness closed the fighting, the Americans still held their position. At night, Santa Anna retreated, and continued his retreat as far as San Luis Potosi. The Mexicans lost about fifteen hundred men in this battle; the Americans, seven hundred and twenty-three. During the remainder of the war, General Taylor's army remained quiet.

CONQUEST OF CALIFORNIA (1847).

6. While these events were taking place on the Gulf of Mexico, a vast territory lying on the Pacific Ocean had been conquered by the Americans. Commodore Sloat, in command of a United States fleet, captured Monterey, on the Pacific coast, in July, 1846. Soon he was joined by Colonel FREMONT and General Kearney, with land forces. These had many fights with the Mexicans. Finally, in the last battle fought, January 8th, 1847, the Americans were victorious, and all the people of CALIFORNIA acknowledged the authority of the United States Government.

SECTION II.

CAPTURE OF VERA CRUZ (27TH MARCH, 1847)

1. The United States Government determined to send an army, by way of VERA CRUZ, to take the city of Mexico. General WINFIELD SCOTT was put in command of this army. He landed his forces, and laid siege to Vera Cruz. On the night of the 18th of March, he opened a terrible fire upon the place from the fleet, and from batteries which he had erected on land. This was kept up till the 27th. Finally, the Mexican commander agreed to surrender the city, and also the castle of San

6. What place did Commodore Sloat capture in 1846? By whom was he joined? When was the last battle fought by them with the Mexicans? What people then acknowledged the authority of the United States?

1. What plan was formed by the United States Government? Who was put in command of this army? What city did he bombard on the 18th of March, 1846? Where is Vera Cruz? (See map facing p. 149.) How far from Mexico? Where is Cerro Gordo? Jalapa? La Puebla? Perote? What was the result of the bombardment? When did the surrender take place? What captures were made?

Juan D'Ulloa, the strongest fort in Mexico. By this surrender, 5,000 prisoners and 500 cannon fell into the hands of the Americans.

BATTLE OF CERRO GORDO (18TH APRIL, 1847).

2. On the 8th of April, General Scott set out on his march for the city of Mexico. When he arrived at CERRO GORDO, a rocky pass in the Cordilleras, he found before him an army of 12,000 Mexicans, commanded by Santa Anna. The latter declared that "he would die here rather than retreat." General Scott examined the position of the Mexicans, and thought it was too strong to attack in front. So his engineers, R. E. LEE, and BEAUREGARD, planned a road which should wind around the base of the mountain, and come out on the road to Jalapa, in rear of the Mexican army. In three days' time, this road was finished by the Americans. The Mexicans knew nothing of what was going on. On the 18th of April, General Scott made the attack. The Mexicans were completely routed. Those who escaped fled with Santa Anna. The latter was in such a hurry that he *left behind his wooden leg!* The Americans pressed on in hot pursuit, and, on the fourth day, planted the United States flag on the citadel of Perote, fully fifty miles from the scene of battle. The Mexicans lost in this battle 4,000 men in all, and 43 cannon. The Americans lost only 430 men.

2. Where did Scott find a Mexican army in his front? By whom commanded? What number? In what mountains is Cerro Gordo situated? Why did not Scott attack in front? What road was planned by the engineers? In what time was it completed? When did Scott make the attack? What was the result? Describe the pursuit. What was the loss of the Mexicans? Americans?

MARCH TO MEXICO (1847).

3. General Scott marched on to La Puebla, and there waited for reinforcements. These shortly reached him, and he set out for the City of Mexico, at the head of about 10,000 men. On the 11th of August, he reached Ayotla, fifteen miles from Mexico, without having met any Mexican army.

SITUATION OF THE CITY OF MEXICO.

4. The CITY OF MEXICO was formerly situated on an island in the middle of a lake. In the course of time, however, a large part of this lake had filled up, till at last it became a large marsh. Straight roads had been built across this marsh, connecting the city with the mainland. On the road by which the American army was approaching, the Mexicans had a large fort, called El Peñon. General Scott thought this fort too strong to be attacked. Hence he marched his army between the mountains and lakes, and finally, on the 18th of August, he encamped at St. Augustine, eight miles south of the city of Mexico.

BATTLES NEAR MEXICO (1847).

5. The Mexicans had a large army in front of the Americans. General Scott attacked them, and beat them at CONTRERAS and CHURUBUSCO. He captured 37

3. To what city did Scott now march? What was the number of his army after being reinforced here? What place did Scott reach August 11th? Where is Ayotla? (See map facing p. 87.) In what direction from Mexico? In what direction are the following places from the City of Mexico, viz., El Peñon? St Augustine? Contreras? Churubusco? Chapultepec? Name them in order, according to their respective distances from Mexico.

4. How was the City of Mexico formerly situated? How is it now situated? How is it connected with the mainland? What fort protected the road by which the American army was approaching? Why did not Scott attack it? Where did he march? Where encamp?

5. Where did Scott beat the Mexicans? What captures did he make? Where did the Mexicans make their last stand? Where was this fort? Describe the attack. What result? What became of the Mexican army? When did Scott occupy the city?

cannon and 3700 prisoners. The last stand made by the Mexicans was at CHAPULTEPEC. This was a strong fortification very near the city. Soon, a breach was made by the cannon of the Americans. A column of the brave soldiers then charged through the opening, drove the Mexicans out of the fort, and raised the United States flag. The Mexican army fled into the city. During the night, they evacuated it, and General Scott marched in the next day and took possession. This occurred on the 14th of September.

TREATY OF PEACE WITH MEXICO (1848).

6. The capture of Mexico put an end to the war. The Mexicans saw that their soldiers could not beat the Americans; hence they agreed to make peace. After long discussions, the terms of the treaty were settled, and President Polk proclaimed PEACE between the two countries on the 4th of July, 1848. By this treaty, the Mexican Government agreed to give up to the United States all the country north of the Rio Grande, together with all the territory of New Mexico and California. For this, the United States agreed to pay \$15,000,000, and also to pay the debts due to American citizens, which amounted to about three and a half millions of dollars more.

6. What was the effect of the capture of Mexico? What did the Mexicans agree to do? When was peace proclaimed by President Polk? What territory did Mexico give up by this treaty? What sum was paid by the United States?

CHAPTER VII.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF TAYLOR, FILLMORE, PIERCE, AND
BUCHANAN.

GENERAL TAYLOR ELECTED PRESIDENT (1848).

1. In the autumn of the year 1848, General ZACHARY TAYLOR, of Louisiana, was elected President. In the early part of 1848, *gold* was found in large quantities in a branch of the Sacramento river, in California. A great many people at once flocked to this country from the Atlantic States and from Europe. San Francisco, a fine port on the Pacific ocean, soon grew into a large city.

ADMISSION OF CALIFORNIA (1850).

2. As soon as the population was sufficient to form a State, the people of California adopted a Constitution, and applied to Congress to be admitted into the Union. By this Constitution, no one was allowed to hold slaves in this State. The Southern members of Congress said that this was contrary to the agreement they had made with the Northern members. This agreement was that slaves could be held in all parts of the United States *south* of 36° 30' north latitude. A large part of California was *south* of this line. There was a hot debate in Congress on this subject. Finally, HENRY

1. Who was elected President in 1848? Where was gold found in 1848? What effect did this produce? What city grew rapidly?

2. When did California apply for admission into the Union? What did her Constitution prohibit? What did the Southern members of Congress say? What agreement had been made? How did this Constitution break this agreement? What occurred in Congress? Who offered a compromise? Was it accepted? What was this compromise? Why was the "Fugitive Slave Law" of no practical benefit to the Southerners? What Territories were formed by another bill passed by Congress? How was the slavery question to be settled there?

CLAY offered a "*Compromise*," which both parties agreed to. By this, California was admitted *without slavery*, and the Northern States agreed to return runaway slaves to their Southern owners whenever they came into their limits. This law, however, was of very little benefit to the South, as the Northern States obeyed it in but *very few* instances. By another Bill, the Territories of New Mexico and Utah were formed, leaving it to their settlers whether they should have slavery or not.

MILLARD FILLMORE, PRESIDENT, (1850).

3. President Taylor, after a very short illness, died on the 9th of July, 1850. The Vice-President, MILLARD FILLMORE, of New York, then became President. In this same year, JOHN C. CALHOUN, of South Carolina, died. He was a man of pure character, and a great statesman. Two years after, the United States lost two more of her great men. These were HENRY CLAY, of Kentucky, and DANIEL WEBSTER, of Massachusetts. On the 4th of March, 1853, FRANKLIN PIERCE, of New Hampshire, became President.

REPEAL OF THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE (1854).

4. In 1854, Congress passed the "*Kansas-Nebraska Bill*." By this, the two territories, Kansas and Nebraska, were created, and the people who settled them were allowed to determine whether they should be Slave or

3. When did President Taylor die? Who then became President? What distinguished man died in 1850? Who died in 1852? Who became President in 1853?

4. What bill did Congress pass in 1854? What were the provisions of this bill? What compromise was repealed? How had this repeal been implied before? What had this compromise said? Why did the Southern members vote for this repeal? Who succeeded Pierce in 1857?

Free States. The *Missouri Compromise* was now repealed in express language. This repeal was really *implied* in the Bill passed in 1850, forming the Territories of New Mexico and Utah. This Compromise had said that no Southerners should carry their slave property into Territories north of $36^{\circ} 30'$ north latitude. The Southern members thought this was an unconstitutional law, and hence voted to repeal it. In 1857, Pierce was succeeded in the Presidency by JAMES BUCHANAN, of Pennsylvania.

KANSAS WAR (1855).

5. The Northern States sent many settlers to Kansas in order to make it a Free State. Large sums of money were raised to be paid to settlers who would go there from the North. They were also furnished with guns, to be used against the Southern settlers. In the New England States, even the *preachers* aided in these efforts. The Southerners, however, were not frightened by this action of the North. Many of them went to Kansas, and settled there with their slaves. Whenever they were attacked, they defended themselves, and blood was often shed between the two parties. Finally, when there was enough population in Kansas for it to become a State, a convention of the people was held at Le-compton in 1857, and a Constitution was adopted. By this Constitution, settlers were allowed to hold slaves. President Buchanan was in favor of admitting Kansas

5. Where did the Northern States send settlers? Why? How did the Northerners induce settlers to go there? Why did they arm them? In the New England States, who aided in these efforts? Did the Southerners go to Kansas with their slaves? What occurred there? Where did the people of Kansas hold a convention? When? What was allowed by the Constitution adopted by this convention? Who was in favor of admitting Kansas? Who refused? When was Kansas admitted? Where was a telegraphic cable laid in 1858? Was it successful? When was a more successful attempt made?

as a State, but Congress refused to do so. Hence Kansas remained a Territory until 1861, when she was admitted as a Free State. In 1858 a *telegraphic cable* was laid under the ocean from Newfoundland to Ireland, and Queen Victoria sent a message to President Buchanan. It, however, failed to transmit other messages. Another cable was laid in 1866, which is still in successful operation.

JOHN BROWN RAID (1859).

6. JOHN BROWN, a native of New York, had been sent to Kansas by the Northerners. In the Kansas war, he murdered many Southern settlers, at one time killing a whole family in cold blood. On the night of the 17th of October, 1859, this man, in command of a small band of desperadoes, took possession, by force, of the U. S. Armory at Harper's Ferry, Virginia. His purpose was to rouse the slaves, arm them, and induce them to attack their masters. Not one of the slaves of the neighborhood, however, joined him voluntarily. Brown and his party were attacked by the citizens. Many were killed, and finally Brown and the remainder took refuge in a brick building, within the armory grounds. There he defended himself during the day, killing several prominent citizens. He had captured several of the citizens, and threatened to kill them if the house was stormed. President Buchanan heard of the state of affairs, and sent Col. Robert E. Lee, with a

6. Who was John Brown? How did he behave in Kansas? What did he do on the 17th of October, 1859? What was his purpose? Did any slaves join him? By whom was Brown attacked? What result? Why did not the citizens storm the building? Whom did President Buchanan send against Brown? What did he do? What was done with Brown and the other survivors?

body of marines, to Harper's Ferry. Col. Lee called on Brown to surrender, but the latter refused. An attack was then made upon the house, the doors were beaten down, and Brown and his whole party were captured or killed. Brown and those who survived were delivered up to the authorities of the State of Virginia. By them they were tried, condemned, and hanged.

REVIEW QUESTIONS ON PART III.

PAGE.

1. State the principal events during Washington's administration	115	116
2. Give the history of the settlement of Kentucky	117	117
3. Give an account of the Indian wars in Kentucky	117-118	119
4. State what you can of the Slave trade	24-25	119
5. Give the history of the settlement of Tennessee	120	120
6. Give the history of the founding of Washington City	121	121
7. State the principal events during Jefferson's administration	121	122
8. Give the history of the war with Tripoli	122	123
9. State the causes of the second war with Great Britain	123	124
10. Why did New England oppose this war?	124	124
11. Describe Hull's campaign	124	125
12. Give the history of the conduct of the New England States during the war of 1812	125-126-133	139
13. Give the location of the American armies at the commencement of campaign of 1813	126	126
14. Give the history of the operations in Harrison's department	126-127-128-129	130
15. Give the history of the operations of the Army of the Centre	130-131-132	133
16. Give an account of Admiral Cockburn's depredations	133	133
17. Give an account of the Creek War	133	134
18. Of the campaign on the Niagara	131-135	136
19. On Lake Champlain	136	136
20. Of the capture of Washington	136	137
21. Of the attempt on Baltimore	137	137
22. Describe the battle of New Orleans	139	140
23. Describe four naval battles of the war of 1812	141-142	143
24. When was peace with Great Britain declared?	143	143
25. Give the early history of Mississippi	143	143

	PAGE.
26. Name five important events during Monroe's administration.....	144 145
27. Give the early history of Alabama.....	144
28. Give the history of the Missouri Compromise.....	141 145
29. Give an account of the Seminole War.....	146
30. Give the history of the first high protective tariff, and the nullification by South Carolina.....	146 147
31. Give the history of Texas from its settlement to its annexation by the United States.....	148 149
32. What were the causes of the Mexican War?— <i>Ans.</i> The annexation of Texas, and the claim by the United States of the Rio Grande as the boundary line.....	
33. Give an account of the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma.....	150 151
34. Give an account of the capture of Monterey.....	151 152
35. Of the battle of Buena Vista.....	152 153
36. Of the conquest of California.....	154
37. Give an account of Scott's campaign in Mexico.....	154-155-156 157
38. When was peace declared with Mexico, and what were the terms?.....	157
39. Give the history of the admission of California.....	158 159
40. What distinguished men died in 1850 and 1852?.....	159
41. Give the history of the repeal of the Missouri Compromise.....	159 160
42. Of the Kansas War.....	160 161
43. Of the John Brown Raid.....	161 162

PART IV.

HISTORY OF THE GREAT SECTIONAL WAR AND THE YEARS ENSUING.

CHAPTER I.

SECTIONAL WAR.

SECTION I.

SIGNS OF WAR.

1. The bloody struggle for power in Kansas, the John Brown raid, the resistance to the execution of the Fugitive Slave Act in the North, and the ill-treatment of abolitionists in the South, foreshadowed a sectional war. The aspect of political parties was still more ominous. At the Presidential election of 1860, of the four candidates in the field, ABRAHAM LINCOLN was elected. He was the candidate of the Republican party, which openly declared its hostility to slavery; and his election was regarded by many at the South as a blow at their rights and liberties.

SECESSION OF SOUTH CAROLINA AND THE GULF STATES.

2. SOUTH CAROLINA was the first to act. On the 20th December, 1860, a Convention, assembled in Charleston, declared, "that the union before existing between South Carolina and other States, under the

1. What events foreshadowed a sectional war? Who was elected President in 1860? How was his election regarded by many at the South? Why?

2. Which State was the first to act? When did she secede? What reason did she assign for her action? When did Mississippi secede? Alabama? Georgia? Louisiana? Texas?

name of the United States of America, was dissolved." In justification of this step, it was said that the property, lives, and liberty of the citizens were in danger. It was also asserted that the right of secession was a part of that sovereignty which had been extorted from England by force, and which had never been for a moment surrendered to the Federal Government. By the 1st of February, 1861, Mississippi (on the 9th January), Florida (10th), Alabama (11th), Georgia (19th), Louisiana (26th), and Texas (Feb. 1st), had followed the example of South Carolina.

CONFEDERATE STATES.

3. On the 4th February, 1861, delegates from the seceded States assembled at Montgomery, Alabama, and formed a union, under the name of the "CONFEDERATE STATES OF AMERICA." JEFFERSON DAVIS, of Mississippi, was elected Provisional President, and a Government organized. Commissioners were sent to the Border States requesting their co-operation, while agents were dispatched to Washington to ask for a peaceful settlement of difficulties. In the meantime, nearly all of the military posts within the limits of the seceding States were taken possession of.

AN EFFORT TO PRESERVE PEACE.

4. The Border States were not so precipitate. In them, the majority of the people were still for the

3. Who assembled at Montgomery? For what purpose? What was done? Who was elected provisional President? To whom were Commissioners sent? With what design? In the meantime, what places were seized?

4. How were the people of the Border States disposed? What was done in each? What was the Peace Conference? How many States were represented in it? What did it effect?

Union. Conventions were called in each. In accordance with a proposition from Virginia, a Peace Conference, composed of delegates from twenty-one States, assembled in Washington on the 4th of February, 1861. The terms of settlement agreed upon by it were rejected by Congress. Still the Border States clung to the hope of peace, until driven to act by the angry tide of revolution.

FALL OF FORT SUMTER.

5. In Charleston harbor, FORT SUMTER still remained in the possession of the Federals. On the 11th of April, it was attacked by the Confederates, and, after a bombardment of thirty-four hours, Major Anderson, the officer in command, surrendered. The news of this caused great excitement. Mr. Lincoln at once issued a proclamation calling for 75,000 men. The Governors of the Northern States responded with alacrity, while those of the Border States refused to furnish troops for coercion.

CONDUCT OF THE BORDER STATES.

6. Lincoln's proclamation threw all power into the hands of the extremists of either section. In the Virginia Convention, an almost unanimous outcry for separation arose. If she *must fight*, it was said, she would draw her sword in defence of States' Rights. With few dissenting voices, the ordinance of secession was passed, April 17th, 1861. Following her, Arkansas

5. When did Fort Sumter fall? What did Mr. Lincoln do? How did the Governors of the different States respond?

6. What was the effect of the proclamation? What did Virginia do? What States did likewise? When? What was done in Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri?

succeeded, May 6th; North Carolina, May 20th; and Tennessee, June 18th. In Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri, political sentiment was nearly equally divided; hence, the conduct of the State authorities was vacillating. Indeed, to avoid civil strife, the masses of these States were disposed to resign themselves to the current of events.

SECTION II.

WAR IN MARYLAND.

1. Shortly after the issue of the proclamation, a body of troops from Boston and Philadelphia, reached Baltimore on their way to Washington. Here the people, with stones and clubs, gave them a rough reception. The soldiers fired into the crowd, and blood was spilt on both sides. Excitement in the city rose to the highest pitch. It was determined to resist the passage of Federal troops through the city. For this purpose military companies were organized, arms seized, and the bridges towards the North destroyed. For a time, troops for the Capital passed around Baltimore; but soon the city was occupied by the Federals, the State Legislature dispersed, and martial law inaugurated in a great portion of the State.

ACTIVITY OF THE FEDERALS.

2. Troops poured into Washington from the North. From every quarter, the absent ships of war were re-

1. Give an account of the mob in Baltimore. What did the people of that city determine to resist? How did troops go to Washington? What was soon done by the Federals?

2. What steps were taken by the Federals to prepare a fleet? When was a blockade of Southern ports declared? What occurred May 24th?

called. Steamers were bought and hastily fitted up as gunboats. A blockade of the Southern ports was declared (April 19th), and the docks and arsenals of the North resounded with warlike preparations. On the 24th of May, a body of Federals crossed the Potomac and occupied the heights opposite Washington.

ACTIVITY OF THE CONFEDERATES.

3. The zeal of the sturdy North in behalf of the Capital and the Flag, was perhaps surpassed by the ardor of the South in defence of States' Rights. Her martial youth rushed to arms. Her citizens were eager in their offerings of supplies, and the women with their own hands made tents and clothing for the volunteers. RICHMOND was selected as the Confederate Capital, and, on May 29th, Mr. Jefferson Davis, the provisional President, was received in that city with great enthusiasm. The work of organizing a Government was pushed forward. Manufactories of arms and ammunition sprang up as if by magic, and steps were taken to build an inland navy. As fast as troops were equipped, they were forwarded to the threatened points of the border. The greater portion were stationed in Virginia: the main body, under General BEAUREGARD, at Manassas Junction, and a considerable force, under General Jos. E. JOUNSTON, in the Shenandoah Valley.

3. Whence did the Southern troops get their supplies? Who had been chosen provisional President? How did the work of organizing a government progress? Where were the greater portion of the Confederate volunteers stationed? By whom commanded? Where is Manassas Junction? (See map facing p. 103.)

THE BATTLE OF MANASSAS.

4. When Washington was thoroughly fortified, the Federals determined to advance. On the 18th of July, a reconnoitering force discovered the Confederates strongly posted along a little stream, called Bull Run, about twenty-five miles from Washington. On the 21st of July, a large body of Federals menaced the front of the Confederates, while a force of nearly twenty thousand went around the line of defence to assail on the left flank and rear: all being under the command of General McDOWELL. In the meantime, Johnston had joined Beauregard, with the greater portion of his command (their united strength being now about twenty thousand), and met the flanking column near Stone Bridge. Here the battle commenced. The Confederates being in a manner taken by surprise, were for a long time unable to arrest the advance of the Federals. On they came, sweeping everything before them. At last they encountered General T. J. JACKSON. He received their blows, but stood firm. "Look," said General Bee to his men, "at Jackson; there he stands like a *stone wall*." A determined effort was made by the Confederates: reinforcements arrived, and the Federals, attacked in flank and rear, broke and fled.

LOSSES AND EFFECTS OF THE BATTLE.

5. In this battle the Confederates lost three hundred and sixty-nine killed, and one thousand four hundred and eighty-three wounded. The Federals reported a loss of

4. When did the Federals determine to advance? Give an account of the battle of Manassas. How did Jackson get his name of Stonewall?

5. State the losses of the Confederates and Federals? What city might have been taken? What was the effect of the victory upon the Confederates?

four hundred and eighty-one killed, one thousand and one hundred wounded, one thousand four hundred and sixty prisoners. The victors pursued the flying foe for miles and obtained much spoil. If the pursuit had been followed up, it is thought, Washington would have been taken. But the Confederates were not aware of the extent of their victory, and when it was found out, their heads were turned by their great success.

WAR IN MISSOURI.

6. Missouri was torn with civil conflict from the first opening of the war. Her convention refused to pass an ordinance of secession. Governor Jackson called out the State troops. Captain Lyon, a Federal officer, surprised and captured the militia, at Camp Jackson, near St. Louis (10th May). A large body of militia was put under the command of General STERLING PRICE. Colonel Marmaduke (Confederate) was driven from Booneville by General Lyon (June 20). At Carthage (5th July), Sigel, with a superior force, was defeated by Jackson. On the next day the Confederates were reinforced. Under Price and McCulloch, they now moved against Springfield.

BATTLES OF OAK HILL AND LEXINGTON.

7. From this point, the Federals, under General Lyon, advanced and attacked the Confederates at Oak Hill (August 10th). The struggle was long and bloody.

6. What was the condition of Missouri? What did her convention refuse to do? What did Gov. Jackson do? What occurred at Camp Jackson? At Booneville? At Carthage?

7. Give an account of the battle of Oak Hill. Why was this victory without benefit to the Confederates? What occurred at Lexington? When? Who now opposed Price?

Lyon fell, and Sigel with the remaining Federals retreated. Owing to a want of harmony between Price and McCulloch, little was gained by this victory. McCulloch withdrew to Arkansas, but Price pushed on with his Missourians. Marching to Lexington, which was fortified and garrisoned, he forced Colonel Mulligan, with three thousand men, to surrender (September 20th). A new army, under General Fremont, now opposed him, and he was obliged to fall back to the southern border of the State.

SECTION III.

NAVAL EXPEDITIONS.

1. The Confederates had no navy, and hence their seaboard was at the mercy of the Federals. On the 29th of August, an expedition under Commodore Stringham and General Butler took the forts at Hatteras Inlet (North Carolina). Another, under Dupont and Sherman, took Port Royal, South Carolina (November 7th).

WEST VIRGINIA.

2. Early in the war, Northwestern Virginia was occupied by the Federals. At Rich Mountain (July 11th), General McCLELLAN forced the Confederates to surrender. At Carrick's Ford, the Confederate General Garnett was slain (14th July) and his men dispersed. The defeat of Garnett forced General Wise with his

1. Why was the seaboard of the South at the mercy of the Federals? What occurred at Hatteras Inlet? At Port Royal?

2. What occurred at Carrick's Ford? How was West Virginia secured to the Federals?

brigade to Kanawha Valley, and WEST VIRGINIA was thus secured for the Federals. During the summer, Generals Wise and Floyd attempted in vain to drive out the Federals. Floyd defeated Tyler, but was compelled by Rosecrans to fall back behind Sewell Mountain (September 12th).

THE BATTLE OF LEESBURG.

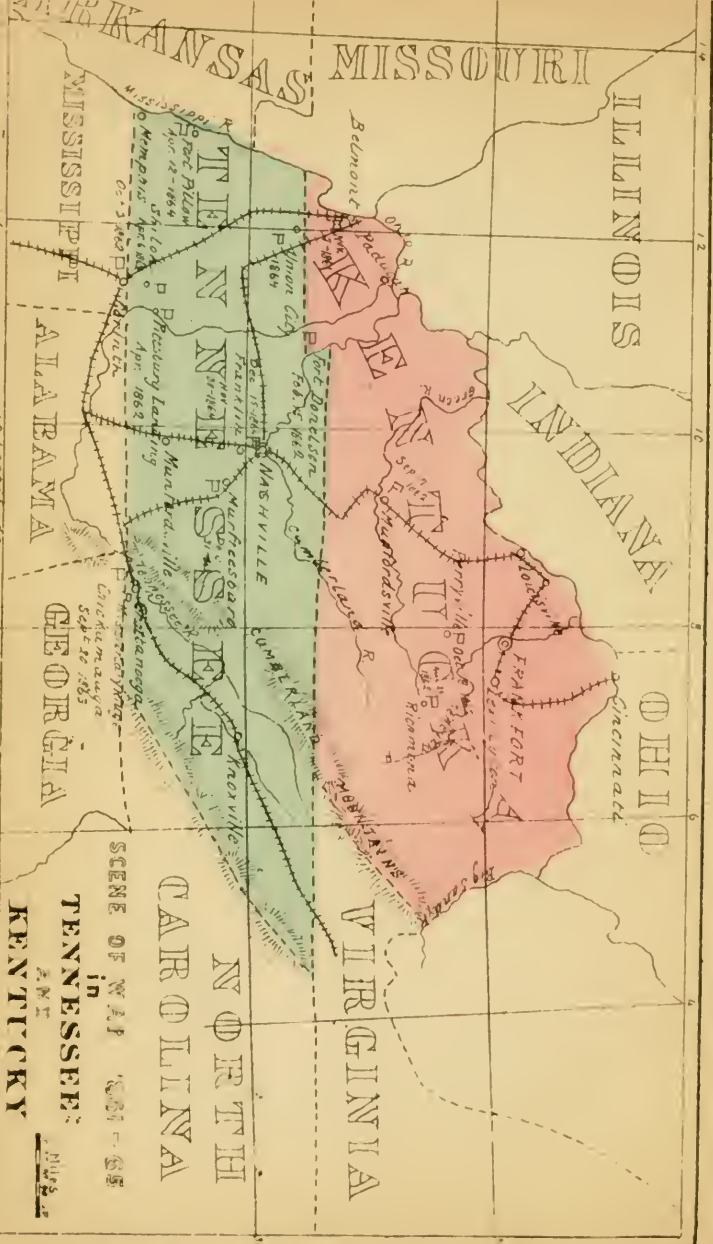
3. The defeat at Manassas aroused the North to great activity. The Confederates approached within sight of the Capitol at Washington. Regiments poured into that city from the North. McClellan was promoted to the command of the Army of the Potomac, and, in a short time, he had organized an army of one hundred and fifty thousand men. The Federals began to be reassured. On October 21st, a force of one thousand and nine hundred men, under Colonel Baker, crossed the Potomac, near LEESBURG. They were met by the Confederates, under General Evans. A fierce battle ensued, in which Baker was killed, and nearly all of his men killed or captured.

OPERATIONS AT SEA.

4. Every effort of the Confederate Government to create a navy failed. Much was expected from privateers, but only a few effected anything. Some were captured soon after leaving port. The *Nashville* and *Sumter*, Confederate men-of-war, did much damage

3. What was the effect of the defeat at Manassas in the North? Who was appointed to the command of the army of the Potomac? Give an account of the battle of Leesburg. Where is Leesburg? (See map facing p. 101.)

4. Did the Confederates have a navy? What was done by privateers? What was expected from foreign Powers? Give an account of the capture and surrender of Messrs. Mason and Slidell.



to Northern commerce, burning their prizes and paroling prisoners. Still it was hoped that foreign recognition would afford the means of procuring a navy. For this, the European demand for cotton was relied upon. Commissioners also were sent to foreign courts. Of these, Mr. Mason was accredited to England, Mr. Slidell to France. They took passage at Havana on the *Trent*, a British steamer. From this vessel they were forcibly taken (November 8th) by Captain Wilkes, and imprisoned in Fort Warren, near Boston. This piece of audacity brought him much honor; but England resented the insult, and was supported by France. The Commissioners were demanded, and finally given up.

WAR IN KENTUCKY.

5. The neutrality of Kentucky was violated by both parties. The first collision between the hostile forces occurred at Belmont (November 7th). The Federals were commanded by General U. S. GRANT; the Confederates by Bishop POLK, of Louisiana. At first the Confederates were beaten, but, upon receiving reinforcements, they compelled the Federals to withdraw. At several points in middle Kentucky hostile forces now confronted each other.

5. By whom was the neutrality of Kentucky violated? Where and when did the first collision in the State occur? Give an account of it. Where is Belmont? (See map.)

SECTION IV.

CAPTURE OF FORT DONELSON.

1. Soon after the beginning of the year 1862, the Federals gained several important victories. At Mill Spring (January 19th), General Zollicoffer was defeated by a Federal force under General THOMAS. Fort Henry, on the Tennessee, was surrendered to Commodore Foote (February 6th). FORT DONELSON, on the Cumberland, was attacked by General Grant (February 16th) by land and water. For three days a terrible battle raged in the midst of snow and ice. The Confederates were greatly outnumbered, and were finally forced to yield. The occupation of Nashville soon followed.

BATTLES OF ELKHORN AND SHILOH.

2. The fall of Fort Donelson compelled the Confederates to abandon Columbus and Bowling Green. Island No. 10, on the Mississippi, was captured by General Pope (April 8th). At Elkhorn (March 8th), after a fierce struggle, the Confederates were beaten; McCulloch was killed and Price wounded. Encouraged by these successes, General Grant now advanced further South. His object was to reach Corinth, where General ALBERT SIDNEY JOHNSTON, strengthened by Beauregard, was posted. But he waited for Buell, who was

1. Give an account of the battle at Mill Spring? What was surrendered to Commodore Foote? Give an account of the taking of Fort Donelson. In what direction and how far from Louisville is Fort Donelson? (See map facing p. 173.)

2. What did the fall of Fort Donelson compel the Confederates to abandon? Give an account of the battle of Elkhorn. Give an account of the battle of Shiloh. What was the result of the first day's fighting? Of the second day's? In what direction and how far from Nashville is Shiloh? Corinth? Pittsburg Landing? (See map facing p. 173.)

on the march to join him. Before Buell's arrival, Johnston advanced and attacked Grant at SHILOH CHURCH. The fight commenced at dawn, and the Federals were surprised and driven to the cover of their gunboats at Pittsburg Landing. The victory was dearly bought. General Johnston was among the killed. During the night, Buell arrived. In the morning, the Federals, now two to one, became the assailants. The battle was hotly contested, and Beauregard was driven from the field and forced back to Corinth.

JEFFERSON DAVIS.

3. On the 22d of February, 1862, JEFFERSON DAVIS, of Mississippi, was inaugurated at Richmond, Va., as President of the Confederate States. He had been elected for a term of six years, without opposition. He had filled already, with great credit, high positions. As Secretary of War under Mr. Pierce, he had won the admiration of his political enemies. As a Senator, he was sagacious, earnest and moderate.

THE FALL OF NEW ORLEANS.

4. NEW ORLEANS, on account of its importance, was strongly fortified. The river was commanded by forts. A boom obstructed navigation, and behind it floated a fleet of gunboats. With an immense force, the Federals made the attack. After a week's bombardment, the boom being destroyed, Commodore FARRAGUT ran by the forts, dispersed and captured the Confeder-

3. When was Jefferson Davis inaugurated? Where? For what time? Describe his character.

4. Why was New Orleans strongly fortified? When was it taken? By whom? To whom was the command of the city given? How did he use his power? Near what lake is New Orleans situated? (See map facing p. 87.) What forts near the mouth of the Mississippi?

ate vessels, and forced the city to surrender (April 25th). The command of the city was given to General B. F. BUTLER. He made a brutal use of his power.

ROANOKE ISLAND.

5. On the 8th of February, a large land and naval Federal force, under General Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough, attacked the Confederates on Roanoke Island, N. C., and captured nearly all. Among the killed was the brave Captain Wise, of Virginia. Other points along the coast were then assailed, and in a short time the Federals took Newbern, N. C., Beaufort, S. C., and Fort Pulaski, at the mouth of the Savannah.

THE "VIRGINIA."

6. Thus far, expeditions, assisted by gunboats, seemed invariably successful. With these, iron-clad and filled with armed men, the Federals took fort after fort. They infested the coasts and rivers of the South. Torpedoes and river obstructions were used, but to little purpose. Confederate genius devised for defence a new kind of war ship. It was a steam vessel clad and roofed with iron, and armed with an iron beak. On the 8th of March, a craft of this kind, the *Virginia*, steamed down Norfolk harbor, and approached the Federal fleet lying near. Dashing first at the *Cumberland*, she soon sunk her. The *Congress* was then attacked, and forced to

5 Give an account of the capture of Roanoke Island. What other points along the coast were taken in a short time? Where is Fort Pulaski? Beaufort? Where is Roanoke Island? (See map facing p 98.) How far from Richmond?

6. What is a gunboat? By means of these what was done by the Federals? What new kind of ship was invented by the Confederates? What occurred in Norfolk harbor on the 8th of March? What occurred next day? In what direction and how far from Richmond is Norfolk? (See map facing p. 106.)

surrender. Night set in, and she returned to Norfolk. Next day she again sallied forth in search of prey. By this time, a newly invented floating battery, the *Monitor*, had arrived. A terrible combat between these mailed monsters now ensued. Night closed the conflict, without either having gained the victory.

SECTION V.

McClellan's Advance.

1. After eight months of preparation, McClellan, with his large army, set out for Richmond. Disembarking his troops (May 2d) at Yorktown, he marched up the peninsula between the York and James, with gunboats protecting his flanks. General Jos. E. Johnston, who commanded the Confederates stationed at Manassas, had divined his purpose. Leaving that point, and proceeding by forced marches to Yorktown, he, all the way from there to the Chickahominy, opposed his advance. By May 22d, McClellan was near enough to Richmond to hear the tolling of the city bells. Another Federal column, under McDowell, was expected. The fate of the Confederate capital hung in the balance.

1. When did McClellan set out for Richmond? By what route? Who opposed him? By May 22d, how near had he gotten to Richmond? Where is Yorktown? (See map facing p. 106.) Describe the Chickahominy river.

STONEWALL JACKSON.

2. Aid was given to the beleaguered city by the brilliant movements of STONEWALL JACKSON in the Shenandoah Valley. On the 8th of March, with an inferior force, he had attacked Shields at Kernstown, and, after a hard fight, had been forced to retire up the Valley. No further trouble was expected from him, and the different columns, under McDowell at Fredericksburg, Fremont in West Virginia, and Banks in the Valley, advanced in the direction of Richmond. Jackson was not idle. Unexpectedly he fell upon Blenker at McDowell (May 8th), and drove him back. Then, going around BANKS, he attacked him in flank at Front Royal (23d of May), and chased him down the Valley and across the Potomac, capturing 3,000 prisoners and immense stores. The Federal authorities, alarmed, recalled McDowell. Shields and Fremont were sent to cut off Jackson, retreating up the Valley with his captures. At CROSS KEYS (8th of June), Jackson turned upon Fremont and repulsed him. Next day he crossed the Shenandoah at PORT REPUBLIC, and attacked Shields. After a sharp contest, the Federals were routed.

THE SEVEN DAYS' FIGHTING.

3. In the meantime, Johnston had attacked McClellan at SEVEN PINES (May 31st), near Richmond. The fight

2. How was aid given to the Confederates? What occurred at Kernstown? What forces now commenced marching towards Richmond? Where is Kernstown? Fredericksburg? The Shenandoah Valley? What occurred at McDowell? At Front Royal? What was the loss of Banks? Who was sent to catch Jackson? What occurred at Cross Keys? At Port Republic? In what direction and how far from Staunton is Cross Keys? Port Republic? (See map facing p. 106.)

3. What occurred at Seven Pines, May 31? Who succeeded Johnston? Who was Robert E. Lee? How did he deceive McClellan? Where did the general attack commence? What occurred at Gaines' Mill? At Malvern Hill? Whither did McClellan retreat? In what direction and how far from Richmond is Seven Pines? (See map.) Gaines' Mill? Malvern Hill?

was severe, but indecisive. In this battle, Johnston was wounded. ROBERT E. LEE was appointed to succeed him. He had stood high in the United States Army. Before the end of the war, he was admired by the whole world, and idolized by the Southern people. He soon determined to attack with his whole available force. To deceive McClellan, a division under Whiting was sent off towards Jackson, while the latter was ordered to unite with Whiting, and to hasten forward and attack the right flank of the Federals. On the 25th of June, the attack commenced at Oak Grove. Next day, LONGSTREET and HILL crossed the Chickahominy and assailed the Federals. The bloody contest lasted till nine o'clock at night, and ended in the repulse of the Confederates. Next day, the Federal position at GAINES' MILL was attacked. The slaughter was fearful, and the issue long doubtful ; but Jackson coming up, the Federals were beaten. McClellan now commenced to fall back to the shelter of his gunboats on the James. Every day witnessed a terrible combat, and only the genius of McClellan saved his army. At MALVERN HILL (July 1st), he made a determined stand. Every effort of the Confederates to take the hill was fruitless. The ground was covered with slain. During the night, McClellan retired, having lost in the seven days' fighting many thousands of men, besides immense stores.

LEE ADVANCES TOWARDS WASHINGTON.

4. After a short breathing spell, Lee moved in the direction of Washington. Jackson led the advance. At SLAUGHTER MOUNTAIN (August 9th), he encountered a superior force of the Federals, under Banks. After a stubborn fight, the Federals were driven from the field. Lee now moved forward, finding the main force of the Federals posted on the north bank of the Rappahannock, under the command of General POPE. On the 29th and 30th (August), the SECOND BATTLE OF MANASSAS was fought, on nearly the same ground upon which the first had occurred. After a combat attended with great slaughter, Pope was badly beaten, and fell back to the entrenchments before Washington. Lee now turned northward, and crossed the Potomac near Leesburg. McCLELLAN, again called to the command of the Army of the Potomac, confronted him with a force of nearly 100,000 men. Lee had scarcely 30,000.

SHARPSBURG.

5. From Frederick city, Jackson was sent against Harper's Ferry. After a siege of three days, the place was surrendered, with 12,000 prisoners and 60 cannon. Jackson then joined Lee at Sharpsburg. Here a great battle was fought (September 17). The Federal loss was 12,500; that of Lee about 8,000. For a day the

4. Who led Lee's advance towards Washington? Give an account of the battle of Slaughter Mountain. Where did Lee encounter the main force of the Federals? What battle was fought on the 29th and 30th of August? Give an account of it. What did Lee now do? Who was again called to the command of the army of the Potomac? In what direction and how far from Washington is Slaughter Mountain? Cedar Mountain? (See map facing p. 106.) Manassas? Leesburg? Frederick? Harper's Ferry? Sharpsburg?

5. Against what place was Jackson sent from Frederick City? How long did he besiege it? What did he capture there? What occurred at Sharpsburg? What was the loss on both sides?

MAP OF LOUISIANA

Scale of Miles

10 20 30 40 50

TENN.

Memphis

COYNER

ARKANSAS

LITTLE ROCK

Washita R.

MISSISSIPPI R.

Yazoo R.

Black R.

Shreveport

1864

Monticello

Pleasant Hill

Grand Ecore

Matchitoches

Alexandria

Rapids

Red R.

Nickburg

1863

JACKSON

Grand Gulf

Natchez

Port Hudson

1863

BATON ROUGE

Bogone

New Orleans

Pearl R.

TEXAS

Sabine R.

GULF OF MEXICO

armies confronted each other. Lee then retreated across the Potomac, slowly followed by McClellan.

SECTION VI.

INVASION OF KENTUCKY.

1. During the advance of Lee, an effort was made by the Confederates to acquire Kentucky. General KIRBY SMITH, moving from Knoxville, Tenn., defeated a Federal force at RICHMOND (August 30th), and occupied Lexington and Frankfort. BRAGG, with another army, entered the State in September. At MUNFORDSVILLE, he took 4,500 prisoners, and pushed on towards Louisville. General BUELL getting there before him, he turned and joined Kirby Smith at Frankfort. Thence they retreated to PERRYVILLE, where, the Federals coming up, a battle was fought (October 8th). In this, the success of the Confederates was sufficient to enable them to make good their retreat into Eastern Tennessee with 4,000 wagons filled with supplies.

OPERATIONS IN NORTHERN MISSISSIPPI.

2. Early in the fall, Corinth and vicinity was again the scene of conflict. At IUKA, after a hard fight (19th of September), Price was defeated by Rosecrans, and retreated during the night. Two weeks later, Price

1. When did the Confederates make an attempt to acquire Kentucky? Under what Generals? What was accomplished by Smith? What by Bragg? What occurred at Perryville? What did the Confederates carry off with them?

2. What occurred at Iuka? At Corinth? What did Grant and Sherman attempt? With what result? In what direction and how far from Louisville is Knoxville? (See map facing p. 173.) Richmond? Lexington? Frankfort? Munfordsville? Perryville? In what direction and how far from New Orleans is Corinth? (See map.) Vicksburg?

and Van Dorn made a fierce attack on Corinth, and were repulsed by Rosecrans. Grant now entered Mississippi with the design of uniting with General Sherman in an attack on Vicksburg. Grant retired without effecting anything, while Sherman was repulsed (Dec. 29th).

BATTLE OF FREDERICKSBURG.

3. After the battle of Sharpsburg, Lee rested, for awhile, in the Shenandoah Valley, and then fell back behind the Rappahannock. BURNSIDE, who had been put in McClellan's place, now advanced on Richmond by way of FREDERICKSBURG. On the 11th and 12th of December, the Rappahannock was crossed. On the 13th, the Confederate position on Marye's Heights was assailed. Every attempt failed, and the ground was covered with slain. On the 15th, the Federals recrossed the river, having lost over ten thousand two hundred men.

BATTLE OF MURFREESBORO'.

4. On the 31st of December, an engagement took place between the armies of Rosecrans and Bragg, near MURFREESBORO', Tenn. On the first day, the Confederates gained the advantage. On the third day (January 2d), the fight was renewed, and the Confederates were worsted. Bragg fell back to Tullahoma.

3. What did Lee do after the battle of Sharpsburg? What did Burnside do? When did he cross the Rappahannock? What occurred on the 13th of December? On the 15th? What was the loss of the Federals? In what direction and how far from Washington is Sharpsburg? (See map facing p. 106.) Fredericksburg? Describe the Rappahannock.

4. Give an account of the battle of Murfreesboro. What became of Bragg? In what direction and how far from Nashville is Murfreesboro? (See map facing p. 173.)

LINCOLN'S PROCLAMATION.

5. On the first of January, 1863, Mr. Lincoln, in accordance with notice given by him September 22d, issued his Emancipation Proclamation, declaring slavery abolished in all the States not in possession of the Federals. This was done for the purpose of conciliating opinion in Europe, and weakening the strength of the South. It, however, produced no effect beyond the Federal lines.

THE SITUATION.

6. The finances of the Federals were becoming embarrassed. Their credit was sustained by heavy taxes, and by making the Treasury paper a legal tender. The finances of the Confederates were in a worse condition. Much of their territory had been laid waste, their foreign communications destroyed, and some of the most important points captured. The Federals had gained almost entire possession of the Mississippi, had secured Missouri, Kentucky, and much of Tennessee, Arkansas and Louisiana. But, in the eyes of the Confederates, the victories of Lee in Virginia counterbalanced disasters elsewhere.

SECTION VII.

BATTLE OF CHANCELLORSVILLE.

1. After the disaster at Fredericksburg, Burnside was removed, and General HOOKER appointed in his place.

5. What was the Emancipation Proclamation? When was it issued? For what purpose? What did it effect?

6. What was the condition of the Federal finances at the end of the second year of the war? How did they maintain their credit? What is said of the Confederate finances? Of their gains and losses during the year?

1. Who succeeded Burnside? What did he attempt? With what force? Give an account of the first day's fight. What occurred that night? What was thought of Jackson? What was the final result of the conflict? What was the loss on both sides?

He soon organized a fine army of more than one hundred thousand men. Lee opposed him with forty-six thousand. Once more the Federals crossed the Rappahannock, and entrenched at CHANCELLORSVILLE. While Hooker waited, Jackson turned his position (May 2d), and routed his right flank. The victory was dearly bought. That night, through mistake, Jackson was mortally wounded by his own men. His death, a few days afterwards, caused intense grief. His life had been so pure that even his enemies praised him. Next day the battle was renewed. The Confederate battle-cry was "Charge, and remember Jackson." Hooker was forced back to the river, and, in a few days, recrossed it. The Confederate loss was ten thousand; the Federal, seventeen thousand, with fourteen guns and twenty thousand stand of arms.

LEE ENTERS PENNSYLVANIA.

2. In June, General Lee went into the Shenandoah Valley. Crossing the Potomac, at Shepherdstown, W. Va., he advanced through Maryland into Pennsylvania. During his advance, a severe cavalry fight at Brandy Station (June 9th) occurred. Winchester, with four thousand prisoners, was captured by Ewell, who succeeded Jackson. Stuart, with his cavalry, approached Baltimore and Washington, and alarmed Philadelphia, and finally joined Lee at Gettysburg.

2. When did Lee again cross the Potomac? What occurred at Brandy Station? What occurred at Winchester? Where did Stuart join Lee?

BATTLE OF GETTYSBURG (JULY 1-3, 1863).

3. Before Stuart's arrival, General Lee had come in contact with the Federals, now commanded by General MEADE. They had seized Cemetery Hill, near GETTYSBURG, and there opposed Lee's further advance. For three days the battle continued, Lee vainly endeavoring to drive the Federals from their position. Both Federals and Confederates performed prodigies of valor, and by their deeds shed new lustre on American glory. At last, the night of the third day closed the conflict. Lee's ammunition was expended, and he determined to withdraw. In this battle, the loss of the Federals was about twenty-three thousand; that of the Confederates was greater.

SECTION VIII.

FALL OF VICKSBURG AND PORT HUDSON.

1. Great efforts were made by the Federals under Grant to take VICKSBURG. After much labor in vain, their gunboats finally ran past the batteries. Grant, crossing the Mississippi at a point near Port Gibson (May 1st), a short distance below Grand Gulf, defeated the Confederates in several engagements (May 12th, 15th, 16th). Vicksburg was now encompassed. After two ineffectual efforts to take it by storm, Grant deter-

3. Who commanded the Federals at Gettysburg? Give an account of the battle. Why did Lee withdraw? What was the loss on both sides? In what direction and how far from Washington is Chancellorsville? (See map facing p. 106.) Winchester? Baltimore? In what direction and how far from Baltimore is Gettysburg? (See map facing p. 82.)

1. Who commanded the Federals in their attempt upon Vicksburg? Where did he cross the river? What did he then do? How did he finally get possession of the place? How many prisoners were taken? In what direction and how far from New Orleans is Vicksburg? Grand Gulf? Port Hudson? Baton Rouge? (See map facing p. 181.)

mined to starve out the garrison. At last, the ammunition and food being nearly exhausted, on the 4th of July, General Pemberton surrendered the place, with its garrison of 23,000 men. On the same day, Price was defeated at Helena, Arkansas, and, four days later, Port Hudson, with its garrison, fell into the hands of the Federals under General Banks.

CAVALRY RAIDS.

2. To aid Grant in his movement against Vicksburg, General Grierson, with a strong body of Federal cavalry (April 17th — May 1st), made a march of eight hundred miles through Mississippi, destroying an immense amount of property, and reaching Baton Rouge in safety. General MORGAN, with 2,000 Confederate cavalry, crossed the Ohio below Louisville (July 9th), and pushed forward across Southern Ohio, destroying property as he advanced. He was pursued by the militia, and being prevented by gunboats from re-crossing the Ohio, his command was scattered, and he, with many of his followers, captured (26th of July).

THE SIEGE OF CHARLESTON.

3. Though there was great activity this year on the seaboard, the most important event was the attempt upon CHARLESTON. In December, 1861, the Federals had tried to destroy the harbor by sinking in it ships filled with stones. In 1862, unsuccessful efforts were made against the city by land and sea. In April, 1863,

2. Give an account of the raid of Gen. Grierson. Of Morgan's. Why could not Morgan recross the Ohio?

3. What occurred Dec. 1st, 1861, in Charleston harbor? What in 1862? What in April, 1863? How far is Fort Sumter from Charleston? (See map facing p. 87.)

a fleet of iron-clads, in conjunction with a land force renewed the attack. Fort Wagner was abandoned. A furious bombardment crumbled the walls of Fort Sumter (17th of August), but the ruins increased its strength.

BATTLES OF CHICKAMAUGA AND MISSIONARY RIDGE.

4. On the 24th of June, Rosecrans advanced against General Bragg, who retreated to Chattanooga (Tenn.). Upon the approach of the Federals, Bragg continued his retreat. Near CHICKAMAUGA Creek (September 19th), Bragg, being reinforced by Longstreet, fell upon Rosecrans and defeated him. The Federals fled to Chattanooga, where they were cooped up for a time, and their supplies cut off. But Grant soon arrived, bringing reinforcements, while, in the meantime, Longstreet had been sent off by Bragg to attack Burnside, at Knoxville. The Federals now assumed the offensive. LOOKOUT MOUNTAIN was taken (November 24th). On the following day, the Confederates were driven from MISSIONARY RIDGE.

CONDITION OF THE SOUTH.

5. The result of the year's transactions was unfavorable to the South. All of Tennessee and nearly all of Arkansas had been gained by the Federals. A part of Virginia had been organized into a new State

4. When did Rosecrans advance against Bragg? To what point did Bragg retreat? Give an account of the battle of Chickamauga. To what place did the Federals retreat? Who reinforced them there? What occurred at Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge? In what direction and how far from Nashville is Chattanooga? (See map facing p. 173.) Chickamauga? Missionary Ridge?

5. How were the year's transactions unfavorable to the South? What was the condition of that section?

(called West Virginia), in the interest of the Federals. They possessed the Mississippi, and had closed all the Atlantic ports except Wilmington, North Carolina. The country through which the opposing armies had marched and fought, had been plundered and laid waste. The finances of the South were depressed, and the necessaries of life could be purchased only at enormous prices in Confederate money.

CONDITION OF THE NORTH.

6. The North had suffered much, but her resources were great, and she got men, money, and arms from Europe. Her finances were managed with skill. To fill her vast armies, a conscription act was passed. Opposition was manifested to the execution of the draft. In New York city, a terrible riot occurred. This was suppressed; but the draft, here at least, was abandoned. Volunteers were, however, obtained by county and State bounties. Federal commerce was much damaged by Confederate cruisers. Of these, the *Alabama*, commanded by Captain SEMMES, and the *Florida*, by Captain Maffit, were most noted.

6. What were the resources of the North? How had she managed her finances? How did she fill her armies? Which were the most noted of the Confederate cruisers?

CHAPTER II.

CAMPAIGNS OF 1864 AND 1865.

SECTION I.

BANKS' RED RIVER EXPEDITION.

1. In March, 1864, General BANKS, in command at New Orleans, set out with a large Federal army, together with Admiral Porter's fleet, and went up the Red river. It was his intention to capture Shreveport, where the Louisiana Legislature held its meetings. Banks was successful as long as he kept his army near the river, and thus had the protection of the fleet. When they arrived at Natchitoches, however, the land army had to march on a road at some distance from the river. At MANSFIELD, about sixty miles from Natchitoches, General KIRBY SMITH's army attacked the advance guard of the Federals, and beat them back. On the following day (April 9th), the Confederates attacked the whole Federal army, at PLEASANT HILL. The latter were beaten badly, and were driven back to their fleet, at Grand Encore. Banks then thought he had better return to New Orleans. Accordingly, he commenced his retreat down the Red river, keeping close to his fleet. When the fleet reached the Rapids, near Alexandria, it was found that the river had fallen so much

1. What expedition started from New Orleans in March, 1864? Where is New Orleans? (See map facing p. 181.) Where is Shreveport? Describe the Red River. In what direction and how far from New Orleans is Natchitoches? Pleasant Hill? Mansfield? Grand Encore? Alexandria? What was the plan of Gen. Banks? How was his army protected? At what point did he leave the river? By whom was he attacked? Where? What result? Where was the second attack made? When? Result? What did Banks then determine to do? What obstacle did the fleet meet with? How was it overcome?

that the gunboats could not go any farther. A dam was, however, built across the river, and, in this way, the water was made deep enough to float the vessels over the Rapids.

BATTLE OF SPOTTSYLVANIA C. H.

2. When the campaign of 1864 began in Virginia, General GRANT was in command of the Federal army in Culpeper Co., Va. He had been made Lieutenant-General, and put in command of all the Federal armies. General LEE's army was posted along the Rapidan river in front of Grant. Lee had fifty-two thousand men; while Grant had about one hundred thousand. During this campaign, Grant's army was reinforced by fully one hundred thousand men. In May, Grant crossed the Rapidan, and posted his army in the "Wilderness." Here, Lee attacked him and gained a partial victory. General Grant, however, had such a large army that he could afford to divide it. Hence, he built strong breastworks in front of his army, and then sent part of it towards SPOTTSYLVANIA C. H., in order to cut off General Lee from Richmond. The latter, however, saw his plan, and at once marched for Spottsylvania C. H., and arrived there before Grant. Grant now determined to beat General Lee's army if he could. So, on the 12th of May, at daybreak, he

2. Where is Culpeper county, Va.? (See map facing p. 106.) Describe the Rapidan river. Where is the "Wilderness"? In what direction and how far from Richmond is Spottsylvania C. H.? Who commanded the Federal army in Culpeper county, Va.? What rank had Grant, and what command? Where was Gen. Lee's army posted? What number of men had Grant? Lee? By how many men was Grant reinforced during this campaign? What was Grant's first movement? What was done by Lee? What plan did Grant then adopt? What point did Lee occupy first? When did Grant attack Lee? Describe the battle. What is said of the Federal loss?

marched forward in dense column and made an attack on the Confederate line. At first, he was successful, and captured many prisoners. Soon, however, the Confederates recovered from their surprise, charged gallantly upon the Federals, and drove them back to their first position. A great many were killed. In fact, the dead and dying Federals covered the ground in front of the Confederate army. From the time Grant crossed the Rapidan to the end of this battle, he lost nearly forty thousand men. This was nearly equal to the whole of Lee's army at the beginning of the battles.

GRANT GOES TO PETERSBURG.

3. General Grant now received a great many more soldiers from Washington. Hence, he was able to flank General Lee again, and compel him to retreat towards Richmond. At COLD HARBOR, on the 3d of June, Grant made another assault upon Lee's army. He was again repulsed with great loss. Grant ordered another attack, but his soldiers refused to obey. They had seen too many of their comrades fall before the Confederate bullets. The Federal army was now marched to the James, and they crossed over the river on pontoon bridges. They then made a rapid march to PETERSBURG, hoping to capture that city before Lee's army could get there. General Lee, however, saw Grant's plan, and arrived at Petersburg before him. Grant attacked again, but was driven back with heavy

3. How was Grant enabled to flank Lee? Where did Grant make another assault? When? Result? In what direction and how far from Richmond is Cold Harbor? (See map facing p. 178.) Petersburg? Why did Grant's army refuse to make another assault? What movement did Grant then make? What place did he try to capture? How was he prevented? What was the result of his attack?

loss. The Federal army now threw up breastworks in front of them, and remained quiet for some time.

GRANT EXPLODES A MINE.

4. Grant thought he would try another plan to beat the Confederate army. He made his soldiers dig a mine. They dug a long ditch underground from their breastworks until they came directly underneath a part of the Confederate breastworks. It took six weeks' hard labor to dig this mine. Eight thousand pounds of gunpowder were now placed in the mine under the Confederate breastworks. A column of Federal troops were drawn up ready to charge as soon as the powder was exploded. The Confederate troops knew nothing of what was going on. The signal was given, and the powder was exploded. The shock was tremendous, and huge pieces of earth were thrown more than two hundred feet in the air. An opening of more than one thousand square yards was made. Two hundred Confederate soldiers were destroyed. The Federal column pushed forward through the opening made in the breastworks. The head of the column was composed of negro troops. As soon as the Confederates recovered from their surprise, they attacked the enemy, and very soon put the negroes to flight. Pushing forward, they drove the Federals out of the works, and back to their first position. Grant lost fully four thousand men in this attack. He dug no more mines.

1. What was the next plan tried by Grant? How long were his soldiers digging this mine? How much gunpowder was placed in the mine? When was the attack to be made? Were the Confederates aware of it? Describe the effect of the explosion. How large an opening was made? How many Confederates were killed? Describe the attack. What result? How many men did Grant lose?

SECTION II.

SIGEL'S ADVANCE IN THE VALLEY.

1. When Grant commenced his campaign in May, he sent, at the same time, a Federal army, under General SIGEL, up the Shenandoah Valley. General BRECKENRIDGE, however, met Sigel at NEW MARKET and defeated him. Whenever one General was defeated, President Lincoln nearly always turned him out, and put another General in his place. So, General HUNTER was put in the place of Sigel. Hunter advanced up the Valley, and defeated a small Confederate force near Staunton. He then marched on against Lynchburg. Hunter burned many private houses on his march, and also the Virginia Military Institute, at Lexington. On the 17th of June, Hunter arrived within two miles of Lynchburg. He found out, however, that General EARLY was there with part of Lee's army. So Hunter retreated very rapidly towards the mountains of Western Virginia. Early pursued, but Hunter fled so fast that he could not be overtaken.

GEN. EARLY'S ADVANCE INTO MARYLAND.

2. General Early, finding that he could not overtake Hunter's army, left him, and marched down the Shen-

1. Where did Grant send an army in May? Under whose command? Who met Sigel? Where? What result? Where is the Shenandoah Valley? (See map facing p. 106.) In what direction and how far from Winchester is New Market? Staunton? Lexington? Where is Lynchburg? How did President Lincoln treat an unsuccessful General? Whom did he put in place of Sigel? Describe Hunter's advance to Lynchburg. What acts did he commit? Who met Hunter at Lynchburg? What followed?

2. What movement did Early then make? Where did he cross the Potomac? When? Where is Frederick? (See map facing p. 82.) Where is Monocacy? Baltimore? Washington? How far and in what direction is Frederick from Washington? Who met Early on the Monocacy? What was the result of the battle? What movement did Early then make? Why did he not capture Washington? Where did he recross the Potomac, and to what place did he march? Where is Leesburg? (See map facing p. 105.) Winchester? In what direction and how far from Winchester is Fisher's Hill? Harrisonburg? Cedar Creek?

Shenandoah Valley. On the 5th of July, he crossed the Potomac, at Shepherdstown, and marched to Frederick, Maryland. On the MONOCACY river, near Frederick, Early met General Lew. Wallace, at the head of ten thousand men. These he easily beat, and drove them towards Baltimore. Early, however, did not follow them, but marched direct upon WASHINGTON CITY. He hoped to be able to take this city by surprise. He found, however, that Washington was guarded by troops sent there from Grant's army. General Early then recrossed the Potomac, near Leesburg, and marched to Winchester.

BATTLE OF WINCHESTER.

3. General Grant now put General SHERIDAN in command of 45,000 men, and ordered him to attack General Early. The latter had only 12,000 men. Hence, in the battle, fought at WINCHESTER on the 19th of September, Early was beaten, and compelled to retreat up the Valley. On the 22d of September, he was again beaten at FISHER'S HILL. He then retreated to Brown's Gap, in the Blue Ridge Mountains, about ten miles from Harrisonburg. Sheridan, on the 6th of October, fell back from Harrisonburg, and, on his retreat, burned all the barns, wheat, hay, and mills, between the North Mountain and the Blue Ridge.

3. Whom did Grant put in command in the Shenandoah Valley? What number of men had he? What number had Early? Where did Sheridan attack Early? When? Result? Where was Early again beaten? When? To what point did he then retreat? How far did Sheridan follow? What did Sheridan do on his retreat?

BATTLE OF CEDAR CREEK.

4. General Early wanted to prevent Sheridan from leaving the Valley and going to aid Grant at Petersburg. So he determined to attack the Federals, though they numbered 30,700 men, and he had only 9,700. Sheridan's army was encamped along CEDAR CREEK. During the night of the 18th of October, Early sent part of his army, by a narrow path between the mountain and the Shenandoah river, around the flank of Sheridan's army. At daybreak, these soldiers attacked the flank, while Early attacked the front of the Federals. The Confederates at first beat the enemy badly, capturing their camp, 19 cannon, and 1500 prisoners. Later in the day, however, the Confederates were defeated and routed, losing most of their artillery and about 3,000 men. This battle closed the fighting in the Valley during this year (1864).

THE "ALABAMA" SUNK (15TH JUNE, 1864).

5. The *Alabama* was a Confederate steamer, commanded by Captain RAPHAEL SEMMES. She cruised in various parts of the world, and captured sixty-six Federal merchant vessels. Finally, in a battle off the coast of France, she was sunk by the United States steam sloop-of-war *Kearsarge*.

4. What did Early want to prevent? What number of men had Sheridan? Early? Where was Sheridan encamped? When did Early attack him? Describe the battle. What did this battle close?

5. What was the *Alabama*? By whom commanded? How many Federal vessels had Semmes captured? Where was the *Alabama* sunk? By what vessel? When?

LINCOLN RE-ELECTED PRESIDENT.

6. In November of this year, an election was held for President in the Northern States. ABRAHAM LINCOLN was re-elected.

SECTION III.

SHERMAN'S ADVANCE.

1. When Grant made his advance this year from the Rapidan, an army of about 100,000 Federals, under General SHERMAN, advanced into Georgia. Sherman's object was to capture ATLANTA, in Georgia. General JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON commanded the Confederate army of 45,000 men, which opposed Sherman. The Federal army marched along the railroad leading from Chattanooga, Tennessee, to Atlanta. Sherman fought many battles with Johnston, but was unable to beat him. The same plan was tried here that Grant tried in Virginia. Sherman protected part of his army by breastworks, and sent the remainder around Johnston's flank. Johnston's army was so much the smaller, that he was obliged to retreat every time this was done. At KENESAW MOUNTAIN, Johnston held his position for a month. On the 27th of June, Sherman attacked the Confederate army here. The Federals were repulsed with great slaughter. Sherman, however, flanked

6. Where was a Presidential election held in 1864? Who was elected?
1. What Federal army made an advance into Georgia in May, 1864? How many men? What was Sherman's object? What rail roads unite at Atlanta? (See map facing p. 98.) In what direction and how far from Savannah is Atlanta? Dalton? Dallas? Macon? Augusta? What is the situation of Savannah? Who commanded the Confederate army in front of Sherman? How many men? What route did the Federal army take? Did Sherman beat Johnston? How did he make the latter retreat? What position did Johnston hold for a month? When did Sherman attack him here? What result? What did Sherman then do?

Johnston again, and compelled him to retreat to the neighborhood of Atlanta.

ATLANTA TAKEN.

2. General Johnston was now taken from the command of the Confederate army, and General Hood was put in his place. The latter made frequent attacks upon Sherman's army in July, and captured many guns, prisoners, and colors. He lost so many men, however, that he could not follow up his successes. General Hood had part of his army at Jonesboro', in the rear of Atlanta. By a rapid march, Sherman moved around Atlanta, and cut off this detachment from Hood's main army. Hood was then obliged to leave Atlanta, and the Federals occupied it on the 2d of September. It was a costly capture, however, to Sherman. He had lost 30,000 men since he began his march.

HOOD GOES INTO TENNESSEE.

3. The provisions for the Federal army were brought over the railroad from Chattanooga. General Hood marched with all his army north of Atlanta, in order to tear up this railroad, which he succeeded in doing to some extent. Sherman, however, followed, and finally drove him from the railroad. Hood then marched into northern Alabama, and thence into Ten-

2. Who was put in Johnston's place? What did Hood do? Why could he not follow up his success? Where was part of Hood's army posted? What movement was made by Sherman? Result? When did the Federals occupy Atlanta? How many men had Sherman lost?

3. How were provisions brought to the Federals? What movement was made by Hood? With what success? What compelled him to leave the line of railroad? Where did he then march? What was his plan? Where was Hood successful? What place did he then besiege? Who commanded the Federal army there? How had he been reinforced? When did he attack Hood? What result? Where did Hood retire? How far is Franklin from Nashville? (See map facing p. 173.) On what river is Nashville?

nessee. His plan was to capture Nashville, Tennessee, while Sherman was at Atlanta, to which point the latter had returned. At first, he was successful. He beat a Federal army at FRANKLIN, and then besieged General THOMAS in NASHVILLE. The latter, however, received large reinforcements from Sherman and elsewhere. He then attacked Hood (Dec. 15-16), routed his army, captured 13,000 prisoners, and drove the remainder into Alabama.

SHERMAN CAPTURES SAVANNAH.

4. In the meantime, Sherman set out from Atlanta at the head of 60,000 men, and marched across Georgia towards SAVANNAH. There was no Confederate army to oppose him; so he spread out his army over the country, making a track sixty miles wide. Besides feeding his army in the country he passed through, a vast amount of property was destroyed, houses were burned, and a large number of slaves were carried off. On the 20th of December, Sherman took possession of Savannah.

COLUMBIA, S. C., BURNED.

5. After remaining about a month at Savannah, Sherman set out from that place, and directed his march towards COLUMBIA, the capital of South Carolina. On his arrival there, the people surrendered

4. What movement did Sherman make? With how many men? Did any Confederate army oppose him? How did Sherman apply his army? What was done by his men? When did he take possession of Savannah?

5. How long did Sherman remain at Savannah? Towards what place did he then march? In what direction and how far from Charleston is Columbia? (See map facing p. 98.) Goldsboro? Newbern? Wilmington? Raleigh? Hillsboro? Was Columbia surrendered to Sherman? What was done by the Federal troops? Where did Sherman then march? What troops met him at Goldsboro? Who commanded the Confederate army in front of Sherman? Why did he retreat? Where? When did Sherman occupy Raleigh?

the place to him. After the Federal troops entered, the city was fired in many places, and almost all the buildings were burned to the ground. Sherman continued his march into North Carolina. At Goldsboro', he was met by a Federal column from Newbern, and one from Wilmington. The latter place had been captured a short time before by the Federals. General Jos. Johnston was in command of the Confederate forces in North Carolina opposed to Sherman. His army was, however, too small to fight the Federals. Hence he retreated to Hillsboro', and Sherman occupied Raleigh on the 13th of April, 1865.

AFFAIRS AT PETERSBURG.

6. In the meantime, affairs of great importance had taken place at PETERSBURG, Va. Grant had an immense army there, while Lee's was so small that many parts of his breastworks were held by soldiers stationed many yards apart. A great many Confederate soldiers were shut up in the prisons at the North. The Confederates had, also, a large number of Federal prisoners, and made frequent offers to exchange them for their men. For eighteen months, however, Grant refused to exchange prisoners. He did not want the Confederate soldiers to go back to their army. In the meantime, the prisoners, on both sides, suffered many and great privations.

6. What is said of Grant's army at Petersburg? Of Lee's? In what direction and how far from Richmond is Petersburg? (See map facing p. 106.) Danville? Lynchburg? Appomattox C. H.? What is said of the efforts to exchange prisoners?

RICHMOND CAPTURED.

7. On the 2d of April, General Grant made an attack upon Lee's lines at Petersburg, and broke through them. It then became necessary to evacuate RICHMOND. This was done, and the Confederate army retreated towards Danville. General Grant followed, attacking Lee's forces whenever he could, and destroying his wagon-trains.

SURRENDER AT APPOMATOX C. H.

8. General Lee was cut off, in his retreat, from Danville. He then marched towards Lynchburg. His army was worn out with marching and fighting, and was without provisions. Moreover, Grant succeeded in getting a large cavalry force in front of the Confederate army. Hence, when General Grant demanded a surrender of the Confederate army, General Lee was obliged to agree to it. This SURRENDER, accordingly took place on the 10th of April, 1865, at APPOMATOX, C. H. The surrender of Lee's army put an end to the war. The Confederate armies elsewhere were unable to continue the war any longer. Johnston surrendered to Sherman on the 26th of April; General Dick Taylor, commanding east of the Mississippi, surrendered on the 4th of May; and, finally, General Kirby Smith, commanding west of the Mississippi, surrendered, on the 26th of May, the remaining organized troops of the Confederacy.

7. When did Grant make an attack on Lee's lines? What result? Toward what place did Lee retreat? What did Grant do?

8. From what place was Lee cut off? Towards what place did he then march? What was the condition of his army? How did Grant halt Lee's army? When did Lee surrender? Where? What was the effect of Lee's surrender? When did Johnston surrender? Dick Taylor? Kirby Smith? Where did each command respectively?

FORCES OF THE FEDERALS AND CONFEDERATES.

9. The entire number of Federal troops (on land and sea) put into service during the war, was two million, six hundred and fifty-six thousand, five hundred and fifty-three (2,656,553). The exact number of Confederate soldiers is not known, but the best authorities state that it was not more than six hundred thousand (600,000). The expense of the war to the Federals was about two thousand, eight hundred million dollars (\$2,800,000,000). The Confederate debt, at the end of the war, amounted to more than two thousand million dollars (\$2,000,000,000). The depreciation of Confederate paper money was very great. In April, 1865, one dollar in gold was worth one hundred dollars in paper money. The depreciation of Federal currency was much less. Its lowest point was reached in July 1864, when one dollar in gold was worth two dollars and eighty-five cents in paper money.

CHAPTER III.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

ASSASSINATION OF PRESIDENT LINCOLN.

1. On the evening of April 14th, President Lincoln, while sitting in a box in the theatre at Washington, was killed by a pistol-shot, fired by John Wilkes Booth. Booth made his escape from the theatre, but was finally overtaken by his pursuers and shot. He committed the act under the fanatical idea that the war would close,

9. What was the total number of Federal troops during the war? Confederate? What was the Federal debt? Confederate? What was the depreciation of the Confederate paper money? Federal?

1. What occurred on April 14th, 1865? Relate the affair. What became of Booth? Why did he assassinate Lincoln? Who became President?

and the South gain her freedom, if Lincoln were killed. By the death of Lincoln, ANDREW JOHNSON, of Tennessee, the Vice-President, became President of the United States.

DAVIS CAPTURED.

2. JEFFERSON DAVIS, President of the Confederate States, was captured by the Federals in Georgia. He was taken to Fortress Monroe, in Virginia, put in close confinement, and, at one time, in irons. He was kept in prison for more than two years. Finally, in 1868 he was brought before the U. S. Court at Richmond, to be tried on the charge of treason. The Government, however, released him without a trial.

SLAVERY ABOLISHED.

3. Congress, in 1865, passed an amendment to the Constitution abolishing negro slavery. Three-fourths of the States agreed to this amendment, the Southern States being required by President Johnson to ratify it. Hence, the President proclaimed it a part of the Constitution, on the 18th of December, 1865.

RECONSTRUCTION MEASURES.

4. Upon the close of the war, President Johnson appointed Military Governors over many of the States

2. Where was President Davis captured? Where was he taken? How treated? How long was he kept in prison? When was he brought before court for trial? On what charge? What was done?

3. What amendment to the Constitution was passed in 1865? Was it ratified by three-fourths of the States? What did President Johnson require of the Southern States?

4. Upon the close of the war, how were the Southern States governed? What did these Governors order? What was Johnson's plan? Was this done? Was Congress satisfied with this? What other amendment to the Constitution was passed by Congress? What was the object of the North-erners in this? Were the Southern States compelled to adopt this amend-ment?

that had seceded. These Governors ordered an election of members to form State Conventions. President Johnson's plan was to recognize the State Governments formed by these Conventions, as soon as they should repeal their Ordinances of Secession, repudiate their Confederate debt, and ratify the amendment for the abolition of slavery. This was done, and soon the State Governments were in operation. Congress, however, was not satisfied with this state of affairs. Another amendment to the Constitution was passed by Congress, which would allow the negroes to vote, and would prevent many of the Southern white people from voting. The Northerners hoped by this to be able to govern the people of the South in the States as well as in Congress. The Southern people were compelled to adopt this amendment before they were allowed to form State Governments, and to send Representative to Congress.

IMPEACHMENT OF PRESIDENT JOHNSON.

5. President Johnson was opposed to the plans of Congress. Hence, he was impeached (that is, charged with "high crimes and misdemeanors") by the House of Representatives, and tried by them before the Senate of the United States. After a long and tedious trial, he was acquitted. During the year 1867, the United States purchased Russian America. This tract contains about five hundred thousand square miles, and the price paid was \$7,200,000 in gold.

5. Why was President Johnson impeached by Congress? By whom tried? Before whom? Result? What purchase was made by the United States in 1867? How much paid?

GRANT ELECTED PRESIDENT.

6. In November, 1868, General U. S. GRANT, of Illinois, was elected President of the United States. Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas were not allowed to vote at this election. In the other Southern States, the negroes voted, and all these States cast their electoral votes for Grant, except Georgia. In 1869, the great Pacific Railroad was finished. This road, with its connecting roads, joins the Atlantic and Pacific States, and is one thousand seven hundred and twenty-seven miles long. It was built in a little more than three years, and cost about seventy-five million dollars.

REVIEW QUESTIONS ON PART IV.

	PAGE
1. State the signs that indicated the approach of the Sectional War.....	161
2. Give the history of the Secession of South Carolina.....	164 165
3. Of the formation of the Confederate States, and their first acts.	165
4. Give the history of the Peace Conference.....	166
5. Of the fall of Fort Sumter.....	166
6. Of the Secession of Virginia, and other Border States	166 167
7. Give an account of the mob at Baltimore.....	167
8. Of the activity of the Federals, and of the Confederates	167 168
9. Give an account of the Battle of Manassas.....	169 170
10. Of the war in Missouri.....	170 171
11. Of the Federal naval expeditions in 1861.....	171
12. Give an account of the war in West Virginia.....	171 172
13. Of the Battle of Leesburg.....	172
14. Of the seizure of Mason and Sildell.....	173
15. Of the capture of Fort Donelson.....	174
16. Of the Federal advance to Corinth. Of the Battle of Shiloh.....	174 175
17. Give an account of the Inauguration of Davis. His character.	175
18. Of the fall of New Orleans.....	175 176

6. Who was elected President in 1868? What States were not allowed to vote? Who voted in the other Southern States? For whom did these States vote? What was completed in 1869? What does it unite? How long is it? In what time built? Cost?

	PAGE
19. Of the capture of Roanoke Island.....	176
20. Of the naval battle near Norfolk.....	176 177
21. Describe the advance of McClellan up the Peninsula.....	177
22. Give an account of Stonewall Jackson's Valley campaign.....	178
23. Of the Seven Days' fighting around Richmond.....	179
24. Of Lee's advance into Maryland.....	180 181
25. Of the Invasion of Kentucky in 1862.....	181
26. Of the Battle of Fredericksburg.....	182
27. Of the Battle of Murfreesboro.....	182
28. What was Lincoln's Proclamation of January, 1863?.....	183
29. What was the situation of the two sections at the close of 1862?.....	183
30. Give an account of the Battle of Chancellorsville.....	183 184
31. Of Lee's Pennsylvania campaign.....	184 185
32. Give an account of the fall of Vicksburg. Of Port Hudson.....	185 186
33. Of Grierson's cavalry raid. Of Morgan's.....	186
34. Of the Siege of Charleston.....	186 187
35. Of the Battles of Chickamauga and Missionary Ridge.....	187
36. Describe the condition of the South at the close of 1863.....	187 188
37. The condition of the North at that time.....	188
38. Give an account of Banks' Red River Expedition.....	189
39. Of Grant's advance to Petersburg.....	190-191 192
40. Of Sigel's, and Hunter's advance in the Valley of Virginia.....	193
41. Of Early's advance into Maryland.....	193 194
42. Of Sheridan's campaign against Early.....	194 195
43. Of the sinking of the <i>Alabama</i>	195
44. Give the history of Sherman's capture of Atlanta.....	196 197
45. Of Hood's advance into Tennessee.....	197 198
46. Of Sherman's advance from Atlanta to Raleigh.....	193 199
47. State the condition of affairs at Petersburg in 1865.....	199
48. State the manner in which Richmond was captured.....	200
49. Give an account of the retreat and capture of Lee's army.....	200
50. Of the surrender of other Confederate armies.....	200
51. State the forces of the Federals during the Sectional War.....	201
52. Of the Confederates.....	201
53. The Federal and Confederate debts, and depreciation of currency.....	201
54. Give an account of the assassination of Lincoln.....	201 202
55. Of the treatment of Jefferson Davis.....	202
56. Give the history of the Reconstruction measures.....	202 203
57. Of the impeachment of President Johnson.....	203
58. Of the election of President Grant.....	204

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

PASSED JULY 4, 1776.

*A Declaration by the Representatives of the United States of America,
in Congress assembled.*

WHEN in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these, are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his Governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature; a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined, with others, to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment, for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments.

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the World for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent

States may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other, our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

[The foregoing declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members:]

JOHN HANCOCK.

New Hampshire.—JOSIAH BARTLETT, WILLIAM WHIPPLE, MATTHEW THORNTON.

Massachusetts Bay.—SAMUEL ADAMS, JOHN ADAMS, ROBERT TREAT PAINE, ELDRIDGE GERRY.

Rhode Island.—STEPHEN HOPKINS, WILLIAM ELLERY.

Connecticut.—ROGER SHERMAN, SAMUEL HUNTINGTON, WILLIAM WILLIAMS, OLIVER WOLCOTT.

New York.—WILLIAM FLOYD, PHILIP LIVINGSTON, FRANCIS LEWIS, LEWIS MORRIS.

New Jersey.—RICHARD STOCKTON, JOHN WITHERSPOON, FRANCIS HOPKINSON, JOHN HART, ABRAHAM CLARK.

Pennsylvania.—ROBERT MORRIS, BENJAMIN RUSH, BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, JOHN MORTON, GEORGE CLYMER, JAMES SMITH, GEORGE TAYLOR, JAMES WILSON, GEORGE ROSS.

Delaware.—CÆSAR RODNEY, GEORGE READ, THOMAS M'KEAN.

Maryland.—SAMUEL CHASE, WILLIAM PACA, THOMAS STONE, CHAS. CARROLL, of Carrollton.

Virginia.—GEORGE WYTHE, RICHARD HENRY LEE, THOMAS JEFFERSON, BENJAMIN HARRISON, THOMAS NELSON, JUN., FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE, CARTER BRAXTON.

North Carolina.—WILLIAM HOOPER, JOSEPH HEWES, JOHN PENN.

South Carolina.—EDWARD RUTLEDGE, THOMAS HEYWARD, JUN., THOMAS LYNCH, JUN., ARTHUR MIDDLETON.

Georgia.—BUTTON GWINNETT, LYMAN HALL, GEORGE WALTON.

CONSTITUTION

OF THE

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect Union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

SECTION 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION 2. [1] The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

[2] No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

PREAMBLE.—For what purposes was the Constitution ordained and established? Was it ordained and established by the people of the United States in a mass, or by the people of each State separately? *Ans.* By the people of each State separately.

What departments of government are established by the Constitution? *Ans.* The legislative, the executive, and the judicial. What is the legislative department? *Ans.* The power that enacts the laws. What, the judicial? *Ans.* The power that interprets the laws. What, the executive? *Ans.* The power that executes the laws.

ARTICLE I. Sec. 1.—In whom is the legislative power vested? Of what does it consist?

Sec. 2. [1] By whom are the representatives chosen? How often? What is an elector? *Ans.* One who has the right to vote in choosing an officer.

[2] What are the three qualifications necessary for a representative?

[3] Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons.* The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

[4] When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the Executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

[5] The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION 3. [1] The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote

[2] Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

*See Article XIV. of the Amendments.

[3] How were representatives and direct taxes apportioned among the States? Who were to be counted in the representative population? Who excluded? What was meant by "all other persons"? *Ans.* Slaves. When was the first census to be made? How often afterwards? What number of people was entitled to one representative? What number in 1860? *Ans.* 127,381.

[4] How are vacancies in the representation filled?

[5] By whom is the Speaker of the House of Representatives chosen? What power belongs alone to the House of Representatives? What is the meaning of "impeachment"? *Ans.* "A charge brought against a public officer for maladministration in his office."

Sec. 3. [1] Of whom is the Senate composed? By whom chosen? For what time? How many votes has each Senator?

[2] Into how many classes are the Senators divided? What proportion of the Senate are elected every second year? When may vacancies be filled by the Governor of a State? How long do these temporary appointees hold their places? Who fill the vacancies then?

[3] No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

[4] The Vice-President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote unless they be equally divided.

[5] The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a President pro tempore in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

[6] The Senate shall have the sole power to try all Impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief-Justice shall preside: And no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

[7] Judgment in cases of Impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION 4. [1] The times, places and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing Senators.

[2] The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION 5. [1] Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each House may provide.

[2] Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

[3] What are the qualifications necessary for a Senator?

[4] Who is the President of the Senate? Has he a vote? When?

[5] By whom are the other officers of the Senate chosen? When does the Senate choose a President pro tempore?

[6] What power belongs to the Senate alone? Who presides when the President of the United States is tried? What is necessary for conviction?

[7] To what extent does judgment in cases of impeachment reach? To what is the convicted party liable and subject, according to law?

Sec. 4. [1] What does the Legislature of each State prescribe? Who may make or alter such regulations? With what exception?

[2] How often must Congress assemble? When?

Sec. 5. [1] Of what is each House the judge? What shall constitute a quorum? What is meant by a "*quorum*"? *Ans.* "Such a number of members as is competent by law to transact business." How may absent members be compelled to attend?

[2] Mention other powers which each House has.

[3] Each House shall keep a Journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either House on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the Journal.

[4] Neither House, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION 6. [1] The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

[2] No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either House during his continuance in office.

SECTION 7. [1] All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

[2] Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their Journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration two-thirds of that House shall agree to pass the Bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that House, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the Journal of each

[3] What must each House keep? What is said about publishing the proceedings? What proportion of each House may demand the yeas and nays on any question?

[4] What is said in regard to adjournment?

Sec. 6. [1] How are the Senators and Representatives paid? What is their present pay? *Ans.* Five thousand dollars per year, and twenty cents per mile of travel to and from Washington City. For what alone may Senators and Representatives be arrested during the session of their respective Houses? What is "*felony*"? *Ans.* Any offence punishable with death is a felony.

[2] What is said of the appointment of a Senator or Representative to a civil office? May a person hold an office under the United States and be a member of either House at the same time?

Sec. 7. [1] Which branch of Congress has alone the power of originating bills for raising revenue? What power has the Senate in this connection?

[2] To whom must the bills passed by both branches of Congress be presented for approval? How can they become laws without his approval?

House respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

[3] Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION 8. [1] The Congress shall have power

To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

[2] To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

[3] To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes;

[4] To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

[5] To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

[6] To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

[7] To establish post offices and post roads;

[8] To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

[3] To what else does this regulation apply besides to *bills*? What question may be settled without being submitted to the President for approval?

Sec. 8. [1] What is the first power granted to Congress? What is a *tax*? *Ans.* A rate, or sum of money assessed on the person or property of a citizen by Government for the use of said Government. What are *duties*? *Ans.* Taxes on the importation, exportation, or consumption of goods. What are *imposts*? *Ans.* Here the meaning is taxes on goods which are imported. What are *excises*? *Ans.* Taxes on goods which are produced or manufactured in the country. May these taxes be unequal in different States?

[2] What is the second power granted to Congress? Third? Fourth? What is meant by *naturalization*? *Ans.* The act of investing a foreigner with the rights and privileges of a native subject. What do the naturalization laws require? *Ans.* They require a residence of five years in the country on the part of a foreigner before he can become a citizen.

[5] What is the fifth power granted to Congress? Sixth? Seventh? Eighth? What is a *copyright*? *Ans.* The exclusive right granted to an author of publishing a book for twenty-eight years, with the privilege of renewing it then for fourteen years. What is a *patent right*? *Ans.* The exclusive right granted to an inventor of a machine of manufacturing it for fourteen years, with the privilege of then renewing it for seven years.

- [9] To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court;
- [10] To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations;
- [11] To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;
- [12] To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;
- [13] To provide and maintain a navy;
- [14] To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;
- [15] To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions;
- [16] To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;
- [17] To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings;—and
- [18] To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION 9. [1] The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

[2] The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

[9] What is the ninth power granted to Congress? Tenth? What is *piracy*? *Ans.* Robbery on the high seas. What is meant by *high seas*? *Ans.* All the waters of the ocean beyond the limits of low water mark. Eleventh power? What are *letters of marque and reprisal*? *Ans.* Commissions granted to individuals, giving them authority to capture the vessels, &c., of another nation. Twelfth power? To what time is the appropriation limited? Thirteenth power? Fourteenth power? [15] What is the fifteenth power granted to Congress? Sixteenth power? What right is reserved to the States? Seventeenth power? What consent is necessary before forts, &c., can be erected by the United States Government? Eighteenth power?

Sec. 9. [1] What was permitted until 1808? Who were meant by "such persons"? *Ans.* Slaves. When was this importation prohibited by Congress? *Ans.* Jan. 1st, 1808.

[2] When alone may the writ of habeas corpus be suspended? What is meant by the *writ of habeas corpus*? *Ans.* A written order given by a magistrate commanding that a certain person shall be brought before him.

[3] No bill of attainder or ex-post facto law shall be passed.

[4] No capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

[5] No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

[6] No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

[7] No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

[8] No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince or foreign State.

SECTION 10. [1] No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

[2] No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

[3] No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

[3] What bill or law shall not be passed? What is a *bill of attainder*? *Ans.* An act of the legislature by which a person supposed to be guilty of high crimes may be put to death without other trial. What is an *ex post facto* law? *Ans.* A law which makes an act punishable which was not punishable at the time of its commission.

[1] What restriction is there to a capitation, or other direct tax?

[5] What articles shall not be taxed?

[6] What is said in regard to revenue and commerce?

[7] When only may money be drawn from the treasury? What statement must be published from time to time?

[8] What is said in regard to title of nobility? Acceptance of presents, offices, &c.? Sec. 10. [1] What is each State forbidden to do? What is stated shall be alone made a tender in payment of debts?

[2] What restriction is laid upon each State in regard to laying imposts or duties? What is to be done with the net produce of such imposts?

[3] What restrictions are laid upon each State by this clause?

ARTICLE II.

THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

SECTION 1. [1] The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same term, be elected, as follows:

[2] Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

[3] [*The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said House shall in like manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice President.]

* This clause within brackets has been superseded and annulled by the 12th amendment.

ART. II. Sec. 1. [1] In whom is the executive power vested? For what time?

[2] How are the electors, who choose the President and Vice-President, selected? How many are selected in each State? Who are excluded from appointment as electors?

[3] By what amendment has this clause been superseded and annulled? (See footnote.)

[4] The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

[5] No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

[6] In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability both of the President and Vice President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

[7] The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

[8] Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION 2. [1] The President shall be Commander-in-chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

[2] He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present

[4] What authority is given to Congress by this clause? When are the electors chosen? *Ans.* On the Tuesday next after the first Monday in the last November of each Presidential term. When do the electors meet to give their votes? *Ans.* On the first Wednesday in the last December of each Presidential term?

[5] What are the qualifications necessary for any one to be President?

[6] When can the duties of President devolve on the Vice President? In what case can Congress fill a vacancy in the office of President?

[7] What is here said in regard to the compensation of the President? What is his salary? *Ans.* \$25,000 per annum. What is that of the Vice-President? *Ans.* \$8,000 per annum.

[8] What oath must be taken by the President?

Sec. 2 [1] What powers are granted to the President by this clause?

[2] What by the second clause?

concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law: but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

[3] The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4. The President, Vice-President and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.

THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.⁶

SECTION 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION 2. [1] The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority;—to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls;—to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction;—to controversies to which the United States shall be a party;—to controversies between two or more States;—between a State and citizens

[3] What by the third clause?

Sec. 3. What duties devolve upon the President?

Sec. 4. How may the President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, be removed from office?

ART. III. Sec. 1. In what is the judicial power of the United States vested? How long do the judges hold their offices?

Sec. 2. [1] To what cases does the judicial power extend?

of another State;—between citizens of different States;—between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens, or subjects.

[2] In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

[3] The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION 3. [1] Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

[2] The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attained.

ARTICLE IV.

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.

SECTION 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION 2. [1] The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

[2] A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled,

[2] In what cases has the Supreme Court original jurisdiction? In what, appellate jurisdiction? What is meant by "original jurisdiction"? *Ans.* "That in which a suit originates." What is meant by "appellate jurisdiction"? *Ans.* Jurisdiction over cases which have been appealed from a lower court.

[3] How must all crimes be tried? What exception? Where tried? When may Congress direct the place of trial?

Sec. 3. [1] In what shall treason consist? How shall a person be convicted of treason?

[2] What power is here given to Congress? With what limitation?

ART. IV. *Sec. 1.* To what must full faith and credit be given in each State? What may Congress prescribe?

Sec. 2. [1] To what privileges shall citizens of each State be entitled?

[2] How are criminals reclaimed by a State?

be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

[3] No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION 3. [1] New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

[2] The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress: provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

[3] What is here said about persons held to service? Who were meant? *Ans.* Fugitive slaves and apprentices.

Sec. 3. [1] What is said here about the admission of States?

[2] What power is here given to Congress?

Sec. 4. What shall the United States guarantee to every State? When may Congress protect a State against domestic violence?

ART. V. How may amendments be made to the Constitution? What amendment was forbidden before 1803? Of what shall no State be deprived at any time?

ARTICLE VI.

[1] All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

[2] This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

[3] The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the Conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

DONE in Convention by the unanimous consent of the States present the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the Independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In Witness whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names,

GEORGE WASHINGTON,
President, and Deputy from Virginia.

New Hampshire.—JOHN LANGDON, NICHOLAS GILMAN.

Massachusetts.—NATHANIEL GORHAM, RUFUS KING.

Connecticut.—WM. SAML. JOHNSON, ROGER SHERMAN.

New York.—ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

New Jersey.—WIL: LIVINGSTON, WM. PATTERSON, DAVID BREARLEY, JONA. DAYTON.

Pennsylvania.—B. FRANKLIN, ROBT. MORRIS, THO: FITZSIMONS, JAMES WILSON, THOMAS MIFFLIN, GEO: CLYMER, JARED INGERSOLL, GOUV: MORRIS.

Delaware.—GEO: READ, JOHN DICKENSON, JACO: BROOM, GUNNING BEDFORD, JUN^r, RICHARD BASSETT.

Maryland.—JAMES M^cHENRY, DANL. CARROLL, DAN: OF ST. THOS. JENIFER.

ART. VI. [1] What debts are here assumed by the United States?

[2] What shall be the supreme law of the land?

[3] Who shall be bound by oath to support this Constitution? What is forbidden?

ART. VII. How many States were necessary for the ratification of the Constitution?

Virginia.—JOHN BLAIR, JAMES MADISON, JR.

North Carolina.—WM. BLOUNT, HU. WILLIAMSON, RICH'D DOBBS SPAIGHT.

South Carolina.—J. RUTLEDGE, CHARLES PINCKNEY, CHARLES COTESWORTH PINCKNEY, PIERCE BUTLER.

Georgia.—WILLIAM FEW, ABR. BALDWIN.

Attest:

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary*.

The Constitution was adopted on the 17th September, 1787, by the Convention appointed in pursuance of the resolution of the Congress of the Confederation, of the 21st February, 1787, and was ratified by the Conventions of the several States, as follows, viz:

By Convention of Delaware,	on the	7th December, 1787.
" " Pennsylvania,	"	12th December, 1787.
" " New Jersey,	"	18th December, 1787.
" " Georgia,	"	2d January, 1788.
" " Connecticut,	"	9th January, 1788.
" " Massachusetts,	"	6th February, 1788.
" " Maryland,	"	28th April, 1788.
" " South Carolina,	"	23d May, 1788.
" " New Hampshire,	"	21st June, 1788.
" " Virginia,	"	26th June, 1788.
" " New York,	"	26th July, 1788.
" " North Carolina,	"	21st November, 1789.
" " Rhode Island,	"	29th May, 1790.

ARTICLES

IN ADDITION TO, AND AMENDMENT OF,

THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA,

Proposed by Congress, and ratified by the Legislatures of the several States, pursuant to the fifth Article of the original Constitution.

ARTICLE I.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or of the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.

AMENDMENTS.—ART. I. What laws is Congress forbidden to make?

ARTICLE II.

A well-regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

ART. II. What right is here secured to the people?

ART. III. What is here said in regard to quartering soldiers?

ART. IV. What right is here secured to the people?

ART. V. What is here said in regard to trial for crime? What, in regard to a second trial? What, in regard to giving testimony? Of what may not a person be deprived without due process of law? What is said about private property?

ART. VI. What provisions are here made in regard to trial for crime?

ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE VIII.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

ARTICLE XII.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate;—The President of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and

ART. VII. What provision here in regard to suits? What prohibition?

ART. VIII. What is here said in regard to bail, fines, and punishments?

ART. IX. What is here said of the rights retained by the people?

ART. X. What powers are reserved to the States? When were the first ten amendments declared adopted? *Ans.* In 1791.

ART. XI. What restriction is here laid upon the judicial power of the United States? When was the 11th amendment declared adopted? *Ans.* In 1798.

ART. XII. State the manner in which the electors choose a President. In the event of their failing to make a choice, by whom is the President chosen? State the manner in which the House of Representatives choose a President. In case of both electors and House of Representatives failing to choose a President, who becomes President? In what case does the Senate elect a Vice-President? When was the 12th amendment declared adopted? *Ans.* In 1804.

House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted;—The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII.

SECTION 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SECTION 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV.

SECTION 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

ART. XIII. Sec. 1. What is the provision of this Article in regard to slavery?

Sec. 2. What power is here given Congress? When was this amendment declared adopted? *Ans.* In 1865.

ART. XIV. Sec. 1. What is provided by this Article?

Sec. 2. What provision is here made in regard to the apportionment of Representatives?

SECTION 2. Representatives shall be appointed among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed; but when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State (being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States,) or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in said State.

SECTION 3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or Elector, or President, or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof; but Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

SECTION 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties, for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned: but neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave. But all such debts, obligations, and claims, shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE XV.

SECTION 1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Sec. 3 State the disqualifications for office by this section.

Sec. 4. What is here said in regard to the public debt?

Sec. 5. What power is here given Congress? When was this amendment declared adopted? *Ans.* In 1868.

ART. XV. *Sec. 1.* What provision is contained in this article?

Sec. 2. What power is here given Congress? When was this article declared adopted? *Ans.* In 1870.

CHRONOLOGICAL RECORD.

A. D.

- 1492. October 12, Columbus discovers America.
- 1497. June 21, Cabot discovers mainland of America (Newfoundland).
- 1498. Columbus discovers South America.
- 1507. The New World named America after Amerigo Vespucci.
- 1512. Ponce de Leon discovers Florida.
- 1513. Balboa discovers the Pacific Ocean.
- 1517. Fernandez discovers Mexico.
- 1519. Cortez invades Mexico.
- 1541. The Mississippi river is discovered by De Soto.
- 1562. Port Royal settled by the Huguenots.
- 1565. St. Augustine, Florida, founded by the Spaniards.
- 1581. Sir Walter Raleigh attempts a settlement at Roanoke Island.
- 1606. London and Plymouth Colonization Companies formed.
- 1607. London Company makes first permanent English settlement at Jamestown, Va.
- 1608. Chesapeake Bay explored by Captain John Smith.
- 1609. Hudson River discovered.
- 1613. Pocahontas marries John Rolfe.
- 1614. Fort on Manhattan Island built by the Dutch.
- 1619. House of Burgesses first assembly, at Jamestown, Va.
- 1620. Pilgrims land at Plymouth, Mass.
- 1621. Cotton first cultivated in Virginia.
- 1624. The London Company dissolved by James I.
- 1628. Massachusetts Bay Colony founded.
- 1630. Boston founded.
- 1633. Connecticut settled.
- 1634. Maryland colonized by Leonard Calvert.
- 1636. Rhode Island settled.
- 1638. Swedes and Finns colonize Delaware.
- 1653. North Carolina first colonized, by Virginians.
- 1661. New Amsterdam is taken, and its name changed to New York.
The English obtain all the Dutch possessions in America.
- 1670. South Carolina colonized.
- 1676. Bacon's Rebellion. Jamestown burned.
- 1680. Charleston, S. C., founded.
- 1682. Pennsylvania settled.
- 1683. Philadelphia founded.

A. D.

1692. Witchcraft in Massachusetts.
 1696. Rice first raised, in South Carolina.
 1702. Mobile founded by the French.
 1718. New Orleans founded by the French.
 1729 { North and South Carolina separated.
 { Baltimore founded.
 1732. George Washington born, Virginia.
 1733. Settlement made at Savannah, Ga., by Oglethorpe.
 1754. Fort Duquesne erected by the French.
 1755. Braddock's defeat.
 1756. War declared between England and France.
 1757. Fort William Henry captured by Montcalm.
 1758. Louisburg and Fort Duquesne captured by the English.
 1759. Quebec captured by the English under Wolfe.
 1763. Peace of Paris. End of French War.
 1765. Parliament passes Stamp Act. Repeals it, 1766.
 1767. Parliament lays duties on tea, &c.
 1768. British troops arrive at Boston.
 1773. Tea thrown overboard at Boston.
 1774. September 5. Meeting of Continental Congress at Philadelphia.
 { April 19, Battle of Lexington and Commencement of the Revo-
 lutionary War.
 1775 { May 21, Independence declared in North Carolina.
 { June 15, Washington elected Commander-in-Chief.
 { June 17, Battle of Bunker Hill.
 { Dec. 31, Montgomery defeated, and killed in the attack on Quebec.
 1776 { March 17, British evacuate Boston.
 { June 28, Battle of Fort Moultrie, S. C.
 { July 4, Declaration of Independence.
 { Aug. 27, Battle of Flatbush, on Long Island.
 { Sept 15, British capture New York city.
 { Dec. 26, Battle of Trenton.
 1777 { Jan. 3, Battle of Princeton.
 { Aug. 6, Battle of Oriskany.
 { Aug. 16, Battle of Bennington.
 { Sept. 11, Battle of Brandywine.
 { Sept. 19, First Battle of Stillwater.
 { Sept. 26, British occupy Philadelphia.
 { Oct. 4, Battle of Germantown.
 { Oct. 7, Second Battle of Stillwater.
 { Oct. 17, Surrender of Burgoyne.
 { Winter quarters at Valley Forge.
 { Feb. 6, Treaty between the United States and France.
 1778 { June 18, Evacuation of Philadelphia by the British.
 { June 28, Battle of Monmouth.
 { Massacre of Wyoming.
 { Dec. 29, British capture Savannah.

A. D.

- July 15, Gen. Wayne storms Stony Point.
- 1779 { Sept. 23, Paul Jones takes the *Serapis*.
- October, Americans and French repulsed at Savannah.
- May 12, British take Charleston, S. C.
- 1780 { Aug. 16, Battle of Camden, S. C.
- Sept. 23, André captured. Arnold's treason.
- Oct. 7, Battle of King's Mountain, N. C.
- Jan. 17, Battle of the Cowpens.
- Jan. and Feb., Retreat through the Carolinas.
- March 15, Battle of Guilford C. H.
- April 25, Battle of Hobkirk's Hill.
- 1781 { Sept. 8, Battle of Eutaw Springs.
- October, Cornwallis besieged at Yorktown.
- October 19, Cornwallis surrenders.
- Sept. 3, Treaty of Peace made between the United States and Great Britain.
- 1783 { Nov. 3, American army disbanded.
- Nov. 25, British evacuate the U. S.
- Dec. 23, Washington resigns his commission.
- 1787. Convention frames Constitution of the U. S.
- 1789 { U. S. Government organized.
- Washington elected President.
- 1791. Vermont admitted into the Union.
- 1792. Kentucky admitted.
- { Treaty between United States and Great Britain.
- 1794 { Whiskey rebellion in Pennsylvania.
- Indians defeated by Gen. Wayne.
- 1796 { Washington's farewell address.
- Tennessee admitted into the Union.
- 1797. John Adams, of Massachusetts, second President.
- 1799. Death of Washington.
- 1800 { Treaty made between France and the United States.
- Washington made the Capital.
- 1801 { Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, third President.
- War with Tripoli.
- 1802. Ohio admitted into the Union.
- 1803. Louisiana purchased by U. S. from France.
- 1807. Burr tried for treason.
- 1809. James Madison, of Virginia, fourth President.
- 1811. Battle of Tippecanoe.
- { June 18, War declared with Great Britain.
- Hull's surrender.
- 1812 { August 19, *Querrière* captured by the *Constitution*.
- October 25, *Macedonian* captured by the *United States*.
- Americans take York, in Canada.
- September 15, Perry's victory on Lake Erie.
- 1813 { October 5, Death of Tecumseh.
- Jackson's campaign against the Creeks, in Alabama.

A. D.

- July 5, Battle of Chippewa.
 - July 25, Battle of Bridgewater.
 - August 24, Battle of Bladensburg.
- 1814 {
 - " " British capture Washington.
 - September 11, Battle of Plattsburg.
 - September 13, Bombardment of Fort McHenry.
 - December 15, Meeting of the Hartford Convention.
- 1815 {
 - January 8, Battle of New Orleans.
 - February 18, Proclamation of peace with Great Britain.
- 1816. Indiana admitted into the Union.
- James Monroe, of Virginia, fifth President.
- 1817 {
 - Seminole war.
 - Mississippi admitted.
- 1818. Illinois admitted.
- 1819 {
 - Alabama admitted.
 - Cession of Florida by Spain to the United States.
- 1820. Maine admitted.
- 1821 {
 - Missouri admitted.
 - Missouri Compromise passed.
- 1824. La Fayette visits United States.
- 1825. John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, sixth President.
- 1826. July 4, Death of John Adams and Jefferson.
- 1829. Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, seventh President.
- 1832 {
 - Nullification in South Carolina.
 - U. S. Bank vetoed by Jackson.
- 1835. Texan Revolution commences.
- 1836 {
 - Admission of Arkansas.
 - Battle of San Jacinto.
- Martin Van Buren, of New York, eighth President.
- 1837 {
 - Admission of Michigan.
 - Independence of Texas recognized.
- 1841 {
 - W. H. Harrison, of Ohio, ninth President—died April 4th.
 - Succeeded by John Tyler, of Virginia.
- 1842. Boundary of Maine settled with Great Britain.
- 1845 {
 - James K. Polk, of Tennessee, eleventh President.
 - Admission of Florida and Texas.
- Commencement of the Mexican war.
- May 8, Battle of Palo Alto.
 - May 9, Battle of Resaca de la Palma.
- 1846 {
 - Sept. 24, Capture of Monterey by General Taylor.
 - California conquered by the United States.
 - Admission of Iowa.
- Northwest boundary of the U. S. settled with Great Britain.
- Feb. 23, Battle of Buena Vista.
- 1847 {
 - March 27, Capture of Vera Cruz.
 - April 18, Battle of Cerro Gordo.
 - Aug. 20, Battles of Contreras and Churubusco.

A. D.

- 1847 { Sept. 8, Battle of Molino del Rey.
" 13, Battle of Chapultepec.
" 14, City of Mexico captured.
- 1848 { July 4, Proclamation of Peace with Mexico.
Gold discovered in California.
Admission of Wisconsin.
1849. Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana, twelfth President.
- 1850 { July 10, Fillmore become President.
Admission of California.
- 1853 { Franklin Pierce, of N. H., fourteenth President.
World's Fair at New York.
- 1854 { Kansas and Nebraska Bill passed.
Missouri Compromise repealed.
Treaty with Japan.
1855. Kansas War.
1857. James Buchanan, of Penn., fifteenth President.
1858. Admission of Minnesota.
- 1859 { John Brown Raid.
Admission of Oregon.
1860. South Carolina passes Ordinance of Secession.
- 1861 { Jan. 9, Mississippi secedes; 11, Alabama and Florida secede;
19, Georgia secedes; 26, Louisiana secedes; 30, admission of
Kansas.
Feb. 1, Texas secedes; 4, Peace Conference meets at Washington;
Confederacy formed at Montgomery, Ala.; 8, Jefferson Davis,
of Mississippi, elected Provisional President of the Confed-
erate States.
March 4, Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, sixteenth President.
April 13, Fort Sumter captured; 15, Proclamation of Lincoln,
calling for 75,000 men for coercion; 17, Virginia secedes; 18,
Confederates capture Harper's Ferry; 19, Troops attacked in
Baltimore; 20, Confederates seize Norfolk Navy Yard.
May 6, Arkansas secedes; 20, North Carolina secedes; 24, Federals
invade Virginia, from Washington.
June 8, Tennessee secedes.
July 5, Battle near Carthage, Mo.; 20, Confederate Congress meets
at Richmond; 21, Battle of Manassas, Va.
August 29, Forts at Hatteras Inlet, N. C., captured.
Sept. 20, Confederates capture Lexington, Mo.
Oct. 21, Battle of Leesburg, Va.
Nov. 7, Battle of Belmont, Mo.; Federals capture Port Royal,
S. C.; 8, Mason and Suddell seized.
Feb. 6, Federals capture Fort Henry, Tennessee; 8, Capture
Roanoke Island, N. C.; 16, Capture Fort Donelson, Tenn.; 22,
Jefferson Davis inaugurated President of the Confederate
States.
March 8, Battle of Pea Ridge, Ark.; Confederate ram *Virginia*

A. D.

- sinks the *Cumberland* and *Congress*; 9, fight between the *Virginia* and *Monitor*; 23, Battle of Kernstown, Va.
- 1862 { April 6 and 7, Battle of Shiloh, Miss.; 25, Federals capture Beaufort, S. C.; Capture of New Orleans.
- May 5, Battle of Williamsburg, Va.; 30, Confederates retreat from Corinth, Miss.; 31, Battle of Seven Pines.
- June 3, Lee takes command at Richmond; 25, Battle of Oak Grove, Va.; 26, Battle of Mechanicsville, Va.; 27, Battle of Gaines' Mill; 29, Battle of Savage Station, Va.; 30, Battle of White Oak Swamp, Va.
- July 1, Battle of Malvern Hill, Va.
- August 13, Battle of Slaughter Mountain, Va.; 30, Second Battle of Manassas, Va.; Battle of Richmond, Ky.
- Sept. 6, Lee's army invades Maryland; 15, Stonewall Jackson captures Harper's Ferry, Va.; 17, Battle of Sharpsburg, Md.
- Dec. 13, Battle of Fredericksburg, Va.; 31 to Jan. 3, Battle of Murfreesboro', Tenn.
- 1863 { Jan 1, Emancipation Proclamation.
- April 7, Federals defeated in attack on Fort Sumter, S. C.
- May 2 and 3, Battle of Chancellorsville, Va.; 10, Death of Stonewall Jackson; 16, Battle of Champion's Hill, Miss.; 17, Federals, besiege Vicksburg, Miss.
- June 15, Lee invades Maryland and Pennsylvania; 20, Admission of West Virginia.
- July 1-3, Battle of Gettysburg, Pa.; 4, Federals capture Vicksburg, Miss.; 8, capture Port Hudson, La.; 13, Riot in New York city; Gen. Morgan captured in Ohio.
- September 8, Federals repulsed at Sabine Pass, Texas; 19-20, Battle of Chickamauga, Ga.; 24, Battle of Missionary Ridge, Ga.
- Feb. 20, Federals defeated at Olustee, Florida.
- April 8, Battle of Mansfield, La.; 9, Battle of Pleasant Hill, La.; 12, Forrest captures Fort Pillow, Tenn.; 18, Confederates capture Plymouth, N. C.
- May 5-7, Battle of the Wilderness, Va.; 12, Battle of Spottsylvania C.H., Va.; 13, 14, Battle of Resaca, Ga.; 15, Battle of New Market, Va.; 28, Battle near Dallas, Ga.
- 1864 { June 14-15, Grant crosses to the south side of the James; 15, *Alabama* sunk; 15-17, Battle of Lookout Mountain, Ga.; 27, Battle of Kencsaw Mountain, Ga.
- July 5, Early invades Maryland; 9, Battle of Monocacy, Md.; 20, 22, 28, Battles before Atlanta, Ga.; 30, Grant's mine exploded at Petersburg, Va.
- August 5, Federal victory in Mobile Bay.
- Sept. 2, Capture of Atlanta, Ga.; 19, Battle of Winchester, Va.; 22, Battle of Fisher's Hill, Va.

A. D.

- 1861 { Oct. 19, Battle of Cedar Creek, Va.; 31, Federals recapture Plymouth, N. C.; Admission of Nevada.
 Nov. 30, Battle of Franklin, Tenn.
 Dec. 15, 16, Battle of Nashville, Tenn.; 21, Capture of Savannah, Ga.
- 1865 { Jan. 15, Capture of Fort Fisher, N. C.
 Feb. 17, Federals capture Columbia, S. C.; 18, Capture Charleston, S. C.; 22, Capture Wilmington, N. C.
 March 19, 20, Battle of Bentonville, N. C.
 April 1, Battle of Five Forks, Va.; 3, Federals occupy Petersburg and Richmond; 9, Lee's surrender; 13, Federals capture Mobile, Ala., and Raleigh, N. C.; 14, Lincoln assassinated 15; Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, becomes President; 26, Johnston's surrender.
 May 4, Taylor's surrender; 10, Capture of Jefferson Davis; 26, Kirby Smith's surrender; Close of the war; 29, Proclamation of Amnesty.
 Dec. 18, Slavery abolished by 13th Amendment to the Constitution.
- 1866 { Representatives from Tennessee admitted into Congress.
 Telegraphic cable laid across the Atlantic.
- 1867 { Admission of Nebraska.
 Russian America purchased.
- 1868 { Impeachment, trial, and acquittal of President Johnson.
 Representatives admitted into Congress from Arkansas, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, North Carolina and South Carolina.
 Fourteenth Amendment of the Constitution ratified.
1869. Ulysses S. Grant, of Ill., fifteenth President.

TABLE I.

PRESIDENTS AND VICE-PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

No.	Presidents.	From what State.	Inaugurated.	Vice-Presidents.
1	George Washington,	Virginia,	April 30, 1789.	John Adams.
2	John Adams,	Massachusetts	March 4, 1797.	Thomas Jefferson.
3	Thomas Jefferson,	Virginia,	March 4, 1801.	{ Aaron Burr,
4	James Madison,	Virginia,	March 4, 1809.	{ George Clinton.
5	James Monroe,	Virginia,	March 4, 1817.	{ George Clinton,
6	John Q. Adams,	Massachusetts	March 4, 1825.	{ Elbridge Gerry.
7	Andrew Jackson,	Tennessee,	March 4, 1829.	Daniel D. Tompkins.
8	Martin Van Buren,	New York,	March 4, 1837.	John C. Calhoun.
9	William H. Harrison,	Ohio,	March 4, 1841.	{ John C. Calhoun,
10	John Tyler,	Virginia,	April 6, 1841.	{ Martin Van Buren.
11	James K. Polk,	Tennessee,	March 4, 1845.	Richard M. Johnson.
12	Zachary Taylor,	Louisiana,	March 5, 1849.	John Tyler.
13	Millard Fillmore,	New York,	July 10, 1850.	George M. Dallas.
14	Franklin Pierce,	N. Hampshire	March 4, 1853.	Millard Fillmore.
15	James Buchanan,	Pennsylvania,	March 4, 1857.	William R. King.
16	Abraham Lincoln,	Illinois,	March 4 1861.	J. C. Breckenridge.
17	Andrew Johnson,	Tennessee,	April 15, 1865.	{ Hannibal Hamlin,
18	Ulysses S. Grant,	Illinois,	March 4, 1869.	{ Andrew Johnson.
				Schuyler Colfax.

TABLE II.
SETTLEMENT, ADMISSION, POPULATION, &c. OF THE STATES AND TERRITORIES

No.	States and Territories.	SETTLED.		Admitted.	Populat'n 1790.	Populat'n 1850.	Representatives in 1850.
		When.	Where.				
1	Virginia.	1607	Jamestown.	English.	748,208	1,195,278	8
2	New York.	1614	New York.	Dutch.	340,120	4,310,846	31
3	Massachusetts.	1620	Plymouth.	English.	378,717	1,457,351	10
4	New Hampshire.	1623	Little Harbor.	English.	141,899	317,603	3
5	Connecticut.	1633	Windsor.	English.	238,141	537,418	4
6	Maryland.	1634	St. Mary's.	English.	319,728	779,756	5
7	Rhode Island.	1636	Providence.	English.	69,110	217,393	2
8	Delaware.	1638	Wilmington.	Swedes.	59,096	125,015	1
9	North Carolina.	1650	Chowan River.	English.	383,451	1,014,235	7
10	New Jersey.	1664	Elizabeth.	Dutch.	184,139	902,980	5
11	South Carolina.	1670	Ashley River.	English.	249,073	795,000	5
12	Pennsylvania.	1682	Philadelphia.	English.	434,373	3,511,547	24
13	Georgia.	1733	Savannah.	English.	82,548	1,188,257	7
14	Vermont.	1734	Fort Dummer.	English.	85,416	330,235	3
15	Kentucky.	1775	Boonesboro'.	English.	73,077	1,399,128	9
16	Tennessee.	1777	Fort Loudon.	English.	35,731	1,237,412	8
17	Ohio.	1788	Marietta.	English.		2,602,481	19
18	Louisiana.	1799	Iberville.	French.		717,026	5
19	Indiana.	1790	Vincennes.	French.		1,612,451	11
20	Mississippi.	1796	Natchez.	French.		839,006	5
21	Ill. in U.S.	1791	Kaskaskia.	French.		2,524,537	14
22	Alabama.	1790	Mobile.	French.		1,002,240	6
23	Maine.	1625	Bristol.	French.		639,719	5
24	Missouri.	1764	St. Louis.	French.		1,722,102	9
25	Arkansas.	1785	Arkansas Post.	French.		474,818	3
26	Michigan.	1670	Detroit.	French.		1,184,266	6
27	Florida.	1565	St. Augustine.	Spaniards.		179,541	1
28	Texas.	1692	San Antonio.	Spaniards.		885,060	4
29	Iowa.	1833	Burlington.	English.		1,193,083	6
30	Wisconsin.	1639	Green Bay.	French.		1,052,875	6
31	California.	1769	San Diego.	Spaniards.		539,712	3

		1846 1811	St. Paul. Astoria.	Americans. Americans. Americans. English. Americans.	WHEN ORGANIZED				
32	Minnesota.							432,537	2
33	Oregon.				1858			90,922	1
34	Kansas.				1859			361,961	1
35	West Virginia.				1861			442,060	3
36	Nevada.				1863			42,677	1
37	Nebraska.				1864			116,888	1
	TERRITORIES.								
1	Alaska.				1867			75,000	
2	Arizona.				1863			9,658	
3	Colorado.				1861			39,706	
4	Dakota.				1861			14,181	
5	Idaho.				1863			14,998	
6	Montana.				1864			20,594	
7	New Mexico.				1850			65,947	
8	Utah.				1850			86,921	
9	Washington.				1853			23,901	
10	Wyoming.				1869			9,118	
11	District of Columbia. Indian Territory.				1791			131,506	
								13,000	
	Total							3,929,827	243

Number of Emigrants arrived from 1820 to 1871=7,448,925.

TABLE III.
SHOWING PROGRESS OF THE UNITED STATES.

	In 1791.	In 1870.
Taxable land, - - - - - acres	163,746,686	
Valuation of same, - - - - - dolls.	479,293,263	
Exports, - - - - - dolls.	20,205,156	
Imports, - - - - - dolls.	23,000,000	
Tonnage, - - - - -	474,374	
Manufactures, - - - - - dolls.	5,600,000	
Revenue, - - - - - dolls.	4,399,473	
Bank Capital, - - - - - dolls.	3,000,000	
Post Offices, - - - - - No.	75	
Post Roads, - - - - - miles.	1,905	
Postal Receipts, - - - - - dolls.	46,294	

TABLE IV.
SHOWING VALUE OF FEDERAL AND CONFEDERATE PAPER MONEY
DURING THE GREAT SECTIONAL WAR.

MONTHS.	Price of Gold in New York.					Price of Gold in Richmond.				
	1861	1862	1863	1864	1865	1861	1862	1863	1864	1865
January,		1 03	1 69	1 59	2 34		1 20	3 00	21 00	50 00
February,		1 04	1 72	1 61	2 16		1 30	3 00	21 00	50 00
March,		1 02	1 71	1 70	2 00		1 50	4 00	23 00	60 00
April,		1 02	1 57	1 89	1 53		1 50	5 00	20 00	100 00
May,		1 04	1 55	1 94		1 10	1 50	5 50	19 00	
June,		1 09	1 48	2 51		1 10	1 50	6 50	18 00	
July,		1 20	1 45	2 85		1 10	1 50	9 00	21 00	
August,		1 16	1 29	2 61		1 10	1 50	14 00	23 00	
September,		1 24	1 43	2 54		1 10	2 00	14 00	25 00	
October,		1 37	1 56	2 29		1 12	2 00	14 00	26 00	
November,		1 33	1 54	2 60		1 15	2 50	15 00	30 00	
December,		1 33	1 52	2 43		1 20	2 50	20 00	49 00	

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

A

Ad-i-ron'-dacks.
Aix-la-Chapelle,
(ăx-lah-sha-pel'.)
Albany, (aul'-ba-ny.)
Al'-be-marle.
Am'-i-das.
Amerigo Vespucia,
(a-mer'-e-go ves-poo'-sha.)
Armistead, (arm'-sted.)
Ap-po-mat'-tox.
Az'-tecs.

B

Baltimore, (baul'-te-more.)
Beaufort, (bu'-fort.)
Beauregard, (bo'-re-gard.)
Behring, (bee'-ring.)
Bermuda, (ber-moo'-da.)
Bexar, (bă-hahr'.)
Bienville, (be-an'-veel.)
Blen-ner-has'-set.
Bon Homme Richard,
(bo-nom' re-shar',)
Borgne, (born.)
Bovadilla, (bo-va-deel'-ya.)

C

Calhoun, (cal-hoon'.)
Campbell, (cam'-el.)
Carthaginian,
(car-tha-gin'-yan,)
Castile, (cas-teel'.)
Ca-taw'-ba.
Caucasian, (caw-cas'-yan.)
Chateaugay, (shă-to'-gay.)
Champlain, (sham-plane'.)
Chaudière, (shaw'-de-are.)
Chippewas, (chip'-pe-wawz.)

Ches'-a-peake.
Chevalier Gouges,
(shev'-a-leer goorg.)
Chick-a-hom'-i-ny.
Chihuahua, (che-whah'-whah.)
Chapultepec,
(chah-pool-tă-pek'.)
Chat-ta-noo'-ga.
Chauncey, (chan'-cy.)
Chickamauga,
(chick-a-maw'-ga.)
Chat-ta-hoo'-che.
Churubusco,
(choo-roo-boos'-co.)

Coahuila, (co-ah-whe'-lah.)
Cochrane, (cok'-ran.)
Col'-le-ton.
Coligny, (co-le'-ny.)
Cornwallis, (corn-wol'-lis.)
Crozat, (cro-zah'.)

D

D'Artaquette, (dar-ta-get'.)
Dey, (day.)
D'Estaing, (des-tang'.)
D'Iberville, (de-bare-veel'.)
Dieskau, (de-es-co'.)
Duquesne, (du-kane'.)
De Grasse. (dŭ gras.)

E

En'-di-cott.
Epervier, (ă-pare-ve-ă'.)
Exchequer, (ex-chek'-er.)

F

Fanchet, (fan'-sha.)
Far'-ra-gut.
Frontignac, (fron'-te-nac.)

G

Genoa, (jen'-o-a.)
 Genet, (jen-a'.)
 Ghent, (gent.)
 Gloucester, (glos'-ter.)
 Goffe, (gof.)
 Grlerson, (greer'-son.)
 Guerrière, (gâre-e-âre').

H

Hayti, (hl'-te.)
 Havre de Grace,
 (hav'-er dŭ grahs.)
 Helster, (hlse'-ter.)
 Hochelaga, (ho-she lah' ga.)
 Hu'-gue-not.

I

Iroquois, (lr-o-kwoy').

J

Jamalca, (ja-mă'-kah.)
 Jalapa, (hah-lah'-pah.)
 Jacques Cartier, (jak ear-te-ă'.)
 Jochamileho, (yo-kah-mill'-co.)
 Jumonville, (zoo-mon'-veel.)

K

Knip-hau'-sen.
 Ké-ar-sarge.
 Kearney, (kar'-ny.)
 Kieft, (keeft.)

L

La Colle, (lah eol.)
 La Fayette, (lah fa-et'.)
 La Salle, (lah sal.)
 Leisler, (llec'-ler.)
 L'Insurgente,
 (lang-soor-zhont'.)
 Leopard, (lep'-ard.)

M

Mad'-oc.
 Madeira, (may-day'-rah.)

Macomb, (ma-koom'.)
 Marquette, (mar-ket'.)
 Mantou, (man'-e-too.)
 Mattapony, (mat-tâ-po-nl'.)
 Mar'-l-on.
 McDonough, (mac-don'-o.)
 Melandez, (mā-len'-deth.)
 Melbourne, (mel'-burn.)
 Meigs, (megz.)
 Mi-an-to-no'-mah.
 Min'-n-its.
 Michikiniqua,
 (mik-e-kin'-e-kwah.)
 Mobile, (mo-beel'.)
 Montcalm, (mont-cahm'.)
 Moultrie, (mole'-tre.)
 Monterey, (mon-tay-ray'.)
 Montreal, (mon-tre-aul'.)
 Mollno del Rey,
 (mo-le'-no del ray.)

Mo-noc'-a-cy.

Mus-king'-um.

N

Natchez, (nateh'-iz.)
 Nova Scotia, (no'-va sko'-sha.)
 Nantes, (nantz.)
 Natchitoches, (nak'-e-tosh.)
 Norwich, (nor'-ritch.)

O

Oglethorpe, (o'-gl-thorp.)
 Ojeda, (o-hă'-dah.)
 Opechancanough,
 (op-e-can'-ca-no.)
 Oxenstlen, (oks'-en-steen.)

P

Pas-sa-ma-quod'-dy.
 Perote, (pā-ro'-tā.)
 Philadelphia, (fil-ā-del'-fe-ā.)
 Phœbe, (fe'-be.)
 Plerre, (peer.)
 Plymouth, (plm-uth.)
 Po-ca-hon'-tas.
 Po-co-tal'-l-go.
 Ponce de Leon,
 (pon'-thā da lă'-ôn.)

Pow-ha-tan'.
Pot-ta-wot'-ta-mies.
Preble, (preb'-bl.)

Q

Que-bec'.

R

Raleigh, (raw'-le.)
Rap-pa-han'-nock.
Resaca, (rā-sah'-ka.)
Rennselaer, (ren'-se-ler.)
Rives, (reevz.)
Ribault, (re-bo')
Rochambeau, (ro-shong-bo'.)

S

Sayle, (sale.)
Sa-van'-nah.
Sacrificios, (sak-re-fe'-the-os.)
Schenectady, (ske-nec'-ta-de.)
Schuyler, (skí'-ler.)
Schuylkill, (skool'-kill.)
Semmes, (sims.)
Sem'-i-noles.
Sheaffe, (shefe.)
Sioux, (soo.)
Sigel, (se'-gel.)
Slaughter, (slaw'-ter.)
Sor'-el.
Soth'el.
Stuyvesant, (sti'-ve-sant.)

Strasburg, (strawz'-burg.)
Sus-que-han'-nah.

T

Tal-lus-chat'-ches.
Tacubaya, (tak-oo-bah'-yah.)
Taney, (taw'-ny.)
Tecumseh, (te-cum'-se.)
Ti-con-de-ro'-ga.
To-mo-che'-chi.
Tripoli, (trip'-o-le.)
Trevillian, (tre-vil'-yan.)

U

Utah, (yoo'-tah.)
Utrecht, (yoo'-tret.)

V

Val-la-do-lid'.
Valparaiso, (vahl-pah-ri'-so.)
Va-len'-tia.
Verrazzani, (va-rat-tshah'-ne.)
Vincennes, (vin-senz'.)

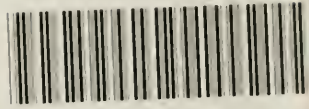
W

West'-more-land.
Whaley, (whol'-le.)

Y

Yeardley, (yurd'-le.)
Yeamans, (ya'-manz.)
Yem'-a-sees.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 448 680 2